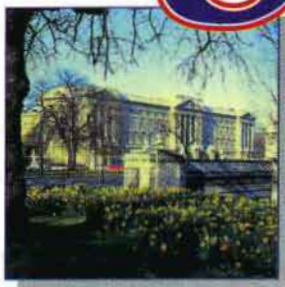


*Easy*

УЧЕБНЫЙ КОМПЛЕКТ

# English

ШКОЛЬНИКУ, АБИТУРИЕНТУ, СТУДЕНТУ  
БАЗОВЫЙ КУРС



Галина Выборова  
Каринэ Махмурян  
Оксана Мельчина

**БАЗОВЫЙ КУРС**



AST ПРЕСС

Г. Выборова, К. Махмурян, О. Мельчина

# EASY ENGLISH

Базовый курс

УЧЕБНИК ДЛЯ УЧАЩИХСЯ СРЕДНЕЙ ШКОЛЫ  
И СТУДЕНТОВ НЕЯЗЫКОВЫХ ВУЗОВ

Рекомендовано Министерством образования  
Российской Федерации

*Издание второе,  
исправленное и дополненное*

Москва  
«АСТ-ПРЕСС КНИГА»  
2003

УДК 80  
ББК 81.2 Англ-923  
В92

Рецензенты:

*А. С. Саакян*, кандидат филологических наук,  
профессор кафедры английской филологии МГПУ;  
кафедра иностранных языков МГВАМиБ  
(зав. кафедрой кандидат филологических наук, доцент *А. Р. Белоусова*)

**Выборова Г. Е. и др.**

**В92** Easy English: Базовый курс: Учебник для учащихся средней школы и студентов неязыковых вузов/Г. Е. Выборова, К. С. Махмурян, О. П. Мельчина. — М.: АСТ-ПРЕСС КНИГА, 2003. — 384 с.: ил. — (Учебный комплект «Easy English»).

ISBN 5-7805-0248-X

Учебник подготовлен на кафедре английского языка гуманитарных вузов МГПУ. Он содержит базовый курс, хрестоматию, краткий свод правил чтения, грамматический справочник в таблицах. Учебник входит в учебный комплект из пяти книг.

548 /  
14

УДК 80  
ББК 81.2 Англ-923

© ООО «АСТ-ПРЕСС КНИГА», 2002  
© Г. Е. Выборова, К. С. Махмурян,  
О. П. Мельчина, 1998



## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Данный учебник является переработанным и дополненным изданием «Easy English».

Учебник рассчитан на тех, кто начинает изучать английский язык, продолжает его изучать после долгого перерыва, на школьников и всех желающих развить навыки устной речи. Учебник может быть использован на курсах иностранных языков, на подготовительном отделении и первом курсе неязыковых вузов.

Работа по данному учебнику развивает следующие базовые навыки.

Учащиеся смогут читать и понимать тексты разговорно-бытового характера, воспринимать английскую речь на слух, делать краткие сообщения по предложенным ситуациям, вести беседу на английском языке с иностранцами на повседневные темы, адекватно переводить тексты среднего уровня сложности, написать письмо на английском языке, кратко изложить письменно основное содержание текста в пределах тем, предусмотренных учебником.

Кроме того, учебник знакомит студентов с некоторыми оригинальными образцами английской и американской прозы и поэзии, а также с рядом реалий, характерных для быта, образа жизни и традиций англоговорящих стран.

Учебник содержит четыре раздела:

1. Базовый курс.
2. Хрестоматию для чтения.
3. Краткий свод правил чтения.
4. Грамматический справочник в таблицах.

Базовый курс состоит из 13 уроков. В основу его положены ситуативно-коммуникативный и тематический принципы. Наряду с коммуникативными упражнениями в учебник также включены традиционные лексические и грамматические упражнения, направленные на формирование автоматизированных навыков, предупреждение и профилактику типичных ошибок и контроль усвоения материала.

Структура урока базового курса:

1. Предтекстовые фонетические упражнения.
2. Список слов, словосочетаний и речевых моделей.
3. Тексты и диалоги.
4. Послетекстовые упражнения (лексические и грамматические).
5. Шутки, стихи, песни.

Предтекстовые упражнения служат для закрепления фонетических навыков и правил чтения. Тексты представлены в монологической и диалогической формах. Они носят познавательный характер и способствуют повышению интереса к изучению английского языка. Тексты построены на лексико-грамматическом материале учебника и позволяют решать одновременно несколько задач в процессе обучения.

Список слов и словосочетаний включает лексические единицы, которые должны активно закрепляться в уроке. Весь активный словарь учебника шире, чем представлен в списке, с учетом разного уровня обучающихся и развития навыков языковой догадки. Активный словарь основной части учебника равен примерно 650—700 лексическим единицам.

Послетекстовые упражнения направлены на отработку тех или иных грамматических явлений и закрепление активной лексики урока. В каждом уроке имеются речевые упражнения. Многие из них носят репродуктивный или творческий характер. Их цель — максимально стиму-

лировывать развитие устных навыков у обучаемых и вырабатывать у них быструю языковую реакцию.

Шутки, стихи и песни рассчитаны на закрепление грамматического и лексического материала, на реализацию потребностей обучаемого в самостоятельном чтении для удовольствия, однако они могут быть использованы в учебном процессе как основа для игровых ситуаций и обсуждений.

Хрестоматия включает адаптированные рассказы английских и американских писателей и может быть использована для изучающего, ознакомительного и поискового видов чтения, для развития навыков техники чтения, навыков работы со словарем, а также послужит базой для развития навыков говорения.

Краткий свод правил чтения, представленный в справочной части, должен помочь студентам самостоятельно работать над техникой чтения. Грамматический справочник в таблицах кратко излагает грамматические правила и поможет при выполнении грамматических упражнений.

При написании учебника использован опыт отечественной и зарубежной методики и учтена необходимость реализации комплексного подхода при формировании у обучаемого компетенции в процессе обучения нормам иноязычного общения. Материал пособия апробирован на кафедре английского языка гуманитарных факультетов МПГУ и на кафедре английского языка МИПКРО.

Авторы выражают благодарность рецензентам за их замечания, которые помогли улучшить качество учебника.

# UNIT I

## ABOUT MYSELF

**Grammar:** to be в Present Indefinite.  
Повелительное наклонение.  
Личные местоимения; указательные местоимения.  
Множественное число существительных.

### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

- |    |                      |                      |
|----|----------------------|----------------------|
| I. | 1. sssθθθsssθθθ, ... | 9. This is. Is this? |
|    | 2. sθsθsθsθ, ...     | That is. Is that?    |
|    | 3. zzzðððzzzððð, ... | 10. It's this.       |
|    | 4. zðzðzðzð, ...     | It's that.           |
|    | 5. sssðððsssððð, ... | It's the other.      |
|    | 6. sðsðsðsð, ...     | If this.             |
|    | 7. zzzθθθzzzθθθ, ... | If that.             |
|    | 8. zθzθzθz, ...      | If the other.        |

II. [æ]  
cat  
fat  
rat  
mat  
man  
man  
sat

III. [æ] — [e]  
pan — pen  
man — men  
bag — beg  
Pat — pet  
rat — red  
sat — set

IV. [i:]  
me  
Pete  
meet  
beat  
read  
pleased

- V. 1. A cat; a big black cat; a nice big black cat.  
A man; a big man; a big fat man; a nice big fat man.  
2. Pat's black cat is in Pat's black hat.  
A black cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat.  
3. It's thundering.  
Three sixths.  
Thick and thin, thick and thin, thick and thin...
- VI. I can think of six thin things.  
Six thin things, can you?  
Yes, I can think of six thin things.  
And of six thick things, too.
- VII. "This" is used for one thing near,  
"That" means one thing over there,  
"These" and "those" mean two or more,  
"Those" are far and "these" are near.

### U Vocabulary

man (мн. ч. men) — мужчина; человек	blue — голубой, синий
woman (мн. ч. women) — жен- щина	here — здесь
friend — друг	there — там
student — студент	this — этот, эта, это
teacher — учитель	that — тот, та, то
car — автомобиль	these — эти
door — дверь	those — те
bag — сумка	table — стол
house — дом	nice (= good) — хороший, приятный
black — черный	new — новый
red — красный	happy — счастливый, довольный
green — зеленый	fat — жирный
brown — коричневый	thin — тонкий, худой
	thick — толстый, густой
	big — большой



to open — открывать  
 to close — закрывать  
 to go — идти, ходить  
 to come — приходить

to give — давать  
 to take — брать  
 to look at — смотреть на  
 to see — видеть

### Text

My name is Nick Brown. I am a student. I am from Boston. This is Paul. He is my friend. He is thin and tall\*. Paul is from London University. He is a good student. I am a good student too. And these are Ann and Dan. They are from Canada. They are French.

—————  
 Hello! Hi! — Привет!

How do you do. — Здравствуйте.

How are you? — Как дела? — I'm fine. — Хорошо.

Meet my friend. — Познакомьтесь с моим другом.

My name is... — Меня зовут...

Glad to meet you. — Рад познакомиться с вами.

Pleased to meet you. — Приятно познакомиться с вами.

See you soon. — До скорого (свидания).

Goodbye. Bye-bye. Bye. — До свидания. Пока!

What? — Что? Какой?

What colour is...? — Какого цвета...?

Thank you. — Спасибо.

Not at all. — Не за что.

—————  
 \* tall — высокий

☺☹ Dialogues

1. — Hello, Mr. Smith. This is Jane Hall. She is a student of Russian.

- How do you do.
- How do you do.
- Jane is from Glasgow.
- Glad to meet you.
- I'm glad to meet you too.



Hello, I'm Jane Hall.

2. — Hi, meet my friend Nick. He is Russian.

- Hello, Nick!
- Nick is a student from Moscow University.
- Pleased to meet you.
- I'm glad to meet you too.



Hi, my name is Nick.

3. — Hello! How are you?

- I'm fine, thank you, and you?
- Very well, too. Thank you. See you soon.
- Bye.



I'm fine.

4. — What colour is your new car?

- It's green.
- Oh, is it?
- Yes, it is. Come and see it. Look! Here it is!
- That's a nice car!



This is my car.



I'm not happy. I want a Rolls-Royce.

5. — Look at this student! Is this his car?  
 — Yes, it is. It's his new Roll-Royce.  
 — Oh, it's great!\*  
 — Yes, it is. He is happy.  
 — And what is that?  
 — It's my car.  
 — But it isn't a car, it's a bike\*\*. Are you happy?

— No, I'm not. I want a Rolls-Royce.

### Exercises:

#### I. Join the following words together:

Model: A nice car.

red	car
tall	man
brown	door
nice	student
thick	friend
good	cat
black	book
big	table
green	bag

#### II. Use "am," "are," "is":

1. He ... a student. 2. You ... French. 3. I ... a teacher.  
 4. She ... a young lady. 5. It ... a car. 6. Nick ... from Glasgow.

\* it's great! — она великолепно!

\*\* a bike — велосипед

7. Ann ... a doctor. 8. This ... a classroom. 9. The door ... brown. 10. Pete ... happy. 11. Bess ... in Moscow now. 12. The book ... thin. 13. They ... from Canada. 14. I ... fat.

*III. Use "I," "you," "he," "she," "it," "we," "they":*

1. ... is a teacher. 2. ... are a good friend. 3. ... is a table. 4. ... am a student. 5. ... is Mr. Robinson. 6. ... is a cat. 7. ... is a young man. 8. ... am fine. 9. ... is in London. 10. ... in the car.

*IV. Read aloud and repeat:*

1. This is a table. It's a big table. The table is big. 2. This is a pen. It's a red pen. The pen is red. 3. This is a lamp. It's a green lamp. The lamp is green. 4. This is a book. It's a thick book. The book is thick. 5. This is a door. It's a brown door. The door is brown. 6. This is a car. It's a black car. The car is black. 7. This is a house. It's a new house. The house is new. 8. This is a cat. It's a fat cat. The cat is fat.

*V. Make up questions. Use the model:*

**Model:** It's a big house. — **Is the house big?**

1. It's a black cat.
2. It's a nice car.
3. It's a brown dog.
4. It's a thin door.
5. It's a green book.
6. It's a white house.
7. He is a good student.
8. She is a young woman.
9. He is a fat man.
10. She is a young doctor.
11. He is a good teacher.

## VI. Use the nouns in the plural:

**Model A:** This is a book. — **These are books.**

**Model B:** That is a car. — **Those are cars.**

## A.

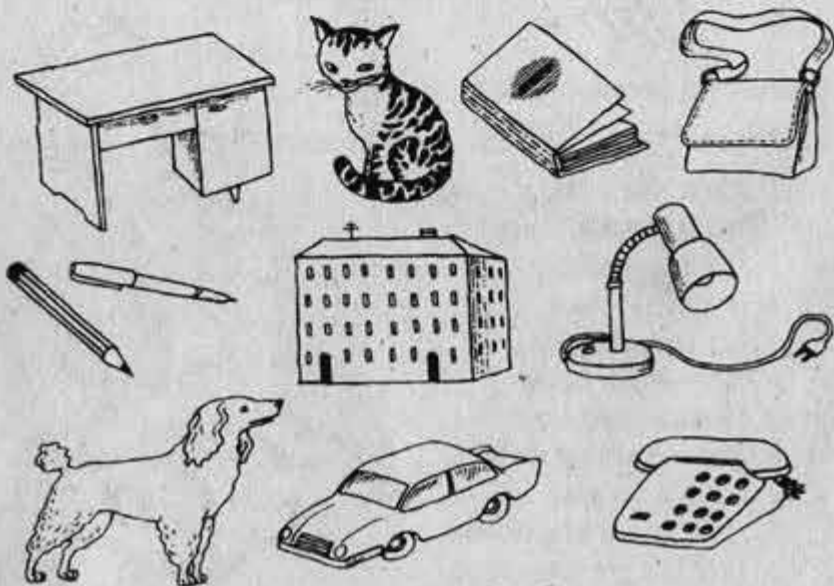
1. This is a red car. —
2. This is my friend. —
3. This is a student. —
4. This is a brown bag. —
5. This is a black cat. —
6. This is my teacher. —
7. This is a nice woman. —
8. This is a tall man. —

## B.

1. That is a big dog. —
2. That is a red lamp. —
3. That is my bike. —
4. That is a good doctor. —
5. That is a young woman. —
6. That is a thick book. —
7. That is a thin notebook. —
8. That is an English boy. —

## WHAT IS THIS? WHAT ARE THESE?

1. *What is this? — This is a pen.*



2. What are these? — These are pens.



*IX. Answer the questions:*

1. Is he from London? 2. Is he tall? 3. Are these students from Moscow? 4. Are those students good? 5. Is Nick happy? 6. Are you glad? 7. Is the car red? 8. Are they pleased to meet Helen? 9. Is it a thick book? 10. Is she a good friend?

*X. Read and ask your classmates to do the same:*

Pete, stand up, please, come here, don't stand, come here, stop, take the book, go to the door, don't open it, come here, go to your seat, sit down, please, thank you.

*XI. Use the verbs of command:*

A. 1. ... here! 2. ... to the table! 3. ... the book! 4. ... the bag. 5. ... the door! 6. ... at my cat!

B. 1. ... not ... the book. 2. ... not ... down, ... here. 3. ... not ... at Ann. 4. ... not ... to the door. 5. ... not ... my pen.

*XII. Give instructions to the students (what to do and what not to do).**XIII. Finish the dialogues:*

1. — Hello, Ted.  
— ... Ben.  
— ... my friend Nick.  
— How do you do.  
— ...
2. — Hello.  
— ... Ann. She is a teacher.  
— Pleased to meet you.  
— ...
3. — Hello. Meet ...  
— Hello. Nice to meet you.  
— I'm ...
4. — Where is Pete?

*VII. Make up questions:*

**Model:** He is happy. — **Is he happy?**

1. She is my friend.
2. Ann is from Canada.
3. Pete is French.
4. They are good students.
5. He is in London.
6. We are students of English.
7. We are happy.

*VIII. Read aloud and repeat:*

1. John is tall. He is happy. 2. Mary is thin. She is happy, too. 3. Ann is fat. She is not happy. 4. Bob is fat, too, but he is happy. 5. Pat is in France. Is she happy? 6. Dan is in London, but he is not happy. 7. My car is new. I'm happy. 8. The cat is in the bag. It is happy. 9. My cat is black. Is it happy? 10. Nelly is fine. Is she happy? 11. My friend is not very well. He is not happy. 12. We are in the classroom. Are we happy?



She is happy.



He is not happy.



Is he happy?



## XVI. Act this out in class:

## You Are a Genius

- Ann:** Robert, you are a genius!  
**Robert:** No, I'm not.  
**Ann:** Yes, you are.  
**Robert:** No, I'm not.  
**Ann:** Yes, you are. Ask Mary.  
**Robert:** Mary, am I a genius?  
**Mary:** No, you aren't.  
**Robert:** Yes, I am.  
**Mary:** No, you aren't.  
**Robert:** Yes, I am.  
**Mary:** Ask the teacher... Is he a genius?  
**Teacher:** Yes, he is.  
**Nick:** No, he isn't.  
**Ann:** Yes, he is.  
**Robert:** Yes, I am.

## XVI. Things to do:

1. Introduce yourself.
2. Introduce your friend.
3. Meet new students.
4. Ask where your new friends are from.
5. Speak about your cat (dog).
6. Speak about your car.

## XVII. Poems and songs to enjoy:

1. One, two, three,  
 Look out for me,  
 For I am coming  
 And I can see.

2. One, two, three, four,  
 Mary's at the cottage door.  
 Five, six, seven, eight,  
 Eating cherries from the plate.

548/4

Иркутское государственное  
 педагогическое училище  
 Иркутский педагогический  
 колледж №2  
 Библиотека

- ... in London.
- ...?
- Yes, he is.

#### XIV. Translate into English:

1. — Здравствуйте, меня зовут Эн. Я из Лондона. Я студентка университета.
2. — Привет, как дела?  
— Спасибо, прекрасно, а как ты?  
— Тоже хорошо. А это что?  
— Это мой новый автомобиль.
3. — Познакомься, это мой друг Поль. Он учитель английского.  
— Рад с Вами познакомиться.
4. — Это Ник и Мери, студенты из Канады. Ник высокий и худой, а Мери толстуха, но она счастлива.
5. — Подойдите сюда! Не стойте, садитесь, пожалуйста.
6. — Что это?  
— Это автомобиль. Автомобиль не новый, но он очень хороший. Ты доволен? Не открывай дверь, там моя собака.
7. — Вы учитель?  
— Нет, я доктор.  
— Вы из Лондона?  
— Нет, я англичанин, но я не из Лондона.

#### XV. Listen to the text:

Hello, my name is Pat. I'm French. I'm from France. I'm a student of Russian at Moscow University. And this is my friend Nick. He is a student, too. He is from London. He is English. He is a good student. I am not. And this is my car. Come here! Look at it! Don't open the door. My cat is in the car. Here it is! — Oh, it's a very nice black cat! — Yes, he is. He is my good friend. — What is his name? — Jack.

## UNIT II

### MY FAMILY

**Grammar:** to be, to have в Present Indefinite.  
Притяжательные местоимения.  
Притяжательный падеж существительных.

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I. [b]	[p]	[d]	[g]	[g] — [k]		
big	pig	dad	bed	get	dog	dog — dock
bag	pin	do	bad	got	fog	fog — fork
best	pen	did	Ted	good	log	log — lock
ball	pond	door	mad	give	frog	frog — frock
bring	please	daughter	red	go	smog	smog — smoke
	part					

II.	[ɪ]	—	[i:]
	bit	—	beat
	pit	—	Pete
	milk	—	meet
	with	—	we
	kitty	—	keep

III. Pete; Pete eats; Pete eats meat; Pete eats lean meat;  
Please, Pete, eat lean meat!

IV. 1. It's Greek to me.  
2. Extremes meet.  
3. Pleased to meet you.

3. One, one, one,  
Little dog, run!  
Two, two, two,  
Cats see you,  
Three, three, three,  
Birds in a tree,  
Four, four, four,  
Rats on the floor.
4. One, two, three, four,  
Mike and Jane, wash the floor!  
Five, six, seven, eight,  
Nick and Ann, wash the plate!  
Nine, ten, eleven, twelve,  
Put your books upon the shelf!

5. I am, you are, he is, she is, we are, you are, they are  
at school.  
Am I, are you, is he, is she, are we, are you, are they  
at school?

6. — Do you speak English? Do you speak English? } 2 раза  
— Yes, but just a little bit.

— Are you from Chile? Are you from Chile? } 2 раза  
— No, I'm not. I'm from Brazil.

— My name is Victor. My name is Victor. } 2 раза  
What's your name and where're you from?

— My name is Alice. My name is Alice. } 2 раза  
I'm from Washington, DC.

— I'm glad to meet you. I'm glad to meet you. } 2 раза  
— I'm so glad to meet you, too.

4. Please, be seated.
5. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

- V.
1. It's the limit!
  2. It isn't his business!
  3. I think it's a little thick.

- VI.
1. Please, pick up my pencil.
  2. Pete's as pleased as Punch.
  3. Peg's as pretty as a picture.
  4. Bob's the best.
  5. Ben's a bag of bones.
  6. Betsy's as busy as a bee.

- VII. Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled pepper;  
If Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled pepper,  
Where is the peck of pickled pepper  
Peter Piper picked?

### U Vocabulary

<b>family</b> — семья	<b>baby</b> — младенец
<b>wife</b> — жена	<b>boy</b> — мальчик
<b>housewife</b> — домохозяйка	<b>schoolboy</b> — школьник
<b>husband</b> — муж	<b>girl</b> — девочка
<b>daughter</b> — дочь	<b>schoolgirl</b> — школьница
<b>granddaughter</b> — внучка	<b>pet</b> — домашнее животное, любимец
<b>son</b> — сын	<b>hobby</b> — хобби, любимое занятие
<b>grandson</b> — внук	<b>to live</b> — жить
<b>brother</b> — брат	<b>to like</b> — хорошо относиться, предпочитать
<b>sister</b> — сестра	<b>to be fond of</b> — хорошо относиться, любить
<b>parents</b> — родители	<b>to work</b> — работать
<b>grandparents</b> — бабушка и дедушка	<b>work</b> — работа
<b>relatives</b> — родственники	<b>worker</b> — рабочий
<b>child</b> — ребенок	
<b>children</b> — дети	
<b>kid</b> — ребенок, дитя	

to introduce — представлять(ся), знакомить	knitting — вязание
to sing — петь	to be married — быть замужем (женатым)
song — песня	to be single — быть не замужем (неженатым)
to dance — танцевать	to be busy — быть занятым
to knit [nit] — вязать	

### *Members of the family:*

mother = mummy, mum, мама — мама
grandmother — бабушка
mother-in-law — теща; свекровь
father = dad, daddy — папа
grandfather — дедушка
grandparents — дедушка и бабушка
father-in-law — тесть; свекор
sister-in-law — невестка; золовка; свояченица
brother-in-law — зять; шурин; деверь; свояк
uncle — дядя
aunt [ɑ:nt] — тетья
cousin [kʌzn] — кузен (кузина), двоюродный брат (-ая сестра)
niece [ni:s] — племянница
nephew ['nevju:] — племянник
grandchildren — внуки
grandson — внук
granddaughter — внучка

### *Text*

#### MY FAMILY

This is my family: my wife, my son, my daughter and I. My name's Peter Black. I'm 40. My wife's name is Helen Black. She is 32. We have two children, a boy and a girl. The boy's name is John. He is twelve years old. He is a schoolboy. My daughter's name is Mary. She is very young. She is only five.

I'm an electronics engineer. I work at a large factory. My wife is a housewife. She has a lot of work to do.



This is a big family.

We have many relatives: cousins, uncles and aunts. My parents are sixty years old. They are farmers. Helen's father is fifty-six and her mother is fifty-three. Helen's sister Ann is her best friend. Ann is a college teacher. She is twenty-four. She is not married. She is fond of our children.

My hobby is sports. My wife's hobby is knitting. My son's hobby is reading. My daughter's hobby is dancing.

We are a happy family.

What's your name? — *Как вас зовут?*

How old are you? — *Сколько вам лет?*

I am thirty (years old). — *Мне тридцать (лет).*

What are you? — *Кто вы (по специальности)? Чем занимаетесь?*

What is your hobby? — *Чем вы любите заниматься? Ваше хобби?*

My hobby is music (dancing, singing, etc.). — *Мое хобби — музыка (танцы, пение и т.д.).*

Is your family large? — No, it isn't. We are four. — *У вас большая семья? — Нет. Нас четверо.*

⊗⊙ Dialogues

1. — Have you a large family?  
 — No, my family is rather small: my wife, my only son and I.  
 — What's your son's name? How old is he? What is his hobby?  
 — Not so many questions at once. My son is eleven, his name is Alec. He is fond of collecting stamps\*.
2. — Is your family large?  
 — Not very. We are four: my wife, my two children and I.  
 — How old are your children?  
 — My son is fourteen and my daughter is twenty.  
 — What are they?  
 — My son is a schoolboy, my daughter is a student.  
 — I see.
3. *Nick:* Ann! Ann! Come here, please. Meet my new English friend Davy Reed.  
*Ann:* Oh, how do you do, Mr. Reed. I'm very glad to meet you.  
*Mr. Reed:* Pleased to meet you, too.  
*Nick:* Well, Ann, Where are the kids? Are they still at school?  
*Ann:* Yes, they are.

Exercises*I. Finish the following:*

1. My mother's sister is my ... and her brother is my ...
2. My wife's mother is my ... and her father is my ....
3. My wife's sister is my ... and my wife's brother is my ...

---

\* to collect stamps — *собирать марки*



4. My uncle's son is my ... and my aunt's daughter is my ... too.

5. My mother has a sister, her son is my mother's ...

6. My father has a brother, his daughter is my father's ...



What are they?

## II. What are your relatives?

**Model:** My father is an engineer.

mother  
father  
wife  
husband  
son  
daughter  
brother  
sister  
cousin

uncle  
aunt  
grand-  
father  
grand-  
mother

a cook  
a pensioner  
a housewife  
an economist  
a secretary  
a schoolgirl  
a student  
a teacher  
a computer  
operator  
a lawyer  
a worker  
a dancer

a business-  
man

## III. What is your (your friend's, your son's, your wife's...) hobby?

**A. Model:** My son's hobby is **sports**.

Use the words: pets, music, tennis, football, basketball, table tennis, hockey, etc.

**B. Model:** My wife's hobby is **knitting**.

Use the words: to dance; to sing; to work in the garden; to collect stamps, coins (монеты), etc.

*IV. Read aloud after the teacher:*

1. My dog is one year old. 2. Our cat is two. 3. My sister is three. 4. My younger brother is four. 5. My cousin is five. 6. Her cat is six. 7. Her brother is seven. 8. His dog is eight. 9. My niece is nine. 10. Her friend is ten. 11. My nephew is eleven. 12. I am twelve. 13. You are thirteen. 14. Your cousin is fourteen. 15. My elder sister is fifteen. 16. Her friend is sixteen. 17. Your elder brother is seventeen. 18. Our aunt is eighteen. 19. Our uncle is nineteen. 20. Our teacher is twenty. 21. His son is thirty. 22. Her daughter is forty. 23. Their mother is fifty-one. 24. Their father is sixty-two. 25. Our grandmother is seventy-three. 26. Our grandfather is eighty-four. 27. My granddad is ninety-five. 28. Their house is one hundred years old.

*V. Use the right word:*

brother, a worker, son, at an office, uncle, in the army, a policeman, a dentist, a taxi driver, a teacher, the school, head.

1. My father is ... . 2. His ... is a computer operator. 3. He is a clerk [kla:k] ... . 4. His ... is an office worker. 5. My ... is a rich businessman. 6. Their son is ... now. He is a soldier. 7. He is ... and his brother is ... . 8. She is ... and her sister is ... . 9. This man is ... of our department. 10. Her aunt is headmistress of ... .

*VI. Finish the following:*

1. She is 10. She is a ... . 2. My mother is 50. She is a ... . 3. Helen is my ... . 4. She is 35. She is not ... . 5. My hobby is ... . 6. We have two ... . 7. My friend is a ... . 8. I have two ... and three ... . 9. My brother is a very good ... . 10. We are a very ... .

*VII. Use:*

A. "I," "he," "she," "it," "we," "you," "they":

1. ... am English. 2. I have two books. ... are good. 3. The book is not yellow. ... is grey. 4. Are ... a student? 5. You and I

are Russians, ... are English. 6. ... is his aunt. 7. ... is a teacher.  
8. Are ... from France?

**B.** "am," "are," "is," "have," "has":

1. The cat ... in the box. 2. ... you a cousin? 3. I ... a student. 4. Mr. Brown ... a daughter. 5. Those cars ... red. 6. She ... a large family. 7. Nick ... my good friend. 8. ... she from England?

**C.** "my," "your," "his," "her," "its," "our," "their":

1. Mr. And Mrs. Brown have two children. Both ... children are boys. 2. Miss Smith is a teacher. ... students are German. 3. We are French. ... friends are English. 4. You are in Bristol but ... family is in York. 5. I have a small cat. ... cat is very funny (смешной). 6. My daughter has a dog. ... nose is long. 7. My friends have a new car. ..., car is very nice. 8. Mary has a new bag. ... bag is very big.

### VIII. Use:

**A.** "to be" in the right form:

1. My son ... a student. 2. His name ... Nick. 3. We ... teachers. 4. I ... a doctor. 5. My friends ... engineers. 6. She ... a housewife. 7. His daughter ... a little girl. She ... three years old. 8. They ... good friends. 9. I ... Russian. I ... from Moscow. 10. He ... fine now. 11. What ... you? — I ... a sociologist. 12. ... he a teacher or a student? 13. She ... a good student, ... she not? 14. What ... your name? — My name ... Mary. 15. How old ... your brother? — He ... twenty-one.

**B.** "to have" in the right form:

1. He ... a large family. 2. He ... two pets at home. 3. They ... a very nice flat in Moscow. 4. Peter ... many friends at school. 5. You ... many English books at home. 6. ... she any brothers or sisters? — Yes, she ... two brothers and a sister. 7. My mother ... three children. 8. I ... two cousins, an aunt and an uncle.

*IX. Give short answers:*

**A. Model:** Have you (got) a dog? — **Yes, I have.** or: **No, I haven't.**

1. Have you a family? 2. Have you any sisters or brothers? 3. Have you any relatives in London? 4. Have you grandparents? 5. Have you a hobby? 6. Have you any pets? 7. Have you got a house? 8. Have you got a car? 9. Have you got a grandmother? 10. Have you got any cousins?

**B. Model:** Has he (got) a cat? — **Yes, he has.** or: **No, he hasn't.**

1. Has your friend a sister? 2. Has he grandparents? 3. Has she any children? 4. Has your father a car? 5. Has your mother a hobby? 6. Has your father got a lot of money? 7. Has your grandmother got a lot of grandchildren? 8. Has your sister got a pet? 9. Has your father got a brother? 10. Has your cousin got a friend?

*X. Answer the questions:*

1. What are you? 2. Have you got a large family? 3. Have you a sister or a brother? 4. How many children have your parents? 5. Are you married or single? 6. How old is your son (daughter)? 7. What is your wife (husband)? 8. What is your friend's name? 9. How old is he (she)? 10. What is your friend's hobby?

*XI. Translate into English:*

1. Это моя семья. Это мои родители. Моя мама — учительница английского в школе, а папа — бизнесмен. 2. Это мой старший брат, он студент университета, он очень занят. 3. Их дочери 14 лет. Она увлекается музыкой и танцами. 4. Мой двоюродный брат — доктор. Он женат, и у него двое детей. Его сыну 6 лет, а дочери 3 года. Его жена — домохозяйка. 5. У меня есть три племянника, но нет племянницы. 6. — Как зовут твою двоюродную сестру? — Ее зовут Кейт. 7. Наш дед очень старый, ему 89 лет. 8. Их сыну

19 лет, он сейчас в армии. 9. — У вас есть хобби? — Да, я люблю вязать. 10. — Сколько лет его бабушке? — Шестьдесят четыре, она на пенсии. 11. — Чем занимается их дочь? — Она секретарь в офисе. 12. У меня есть две бабушки и два дедушки, я счастлив. 13. — Твоя тетя замужем? — Да, ее муж — мой дядя. 14. — У вас есть родственники в Англии? — Нет. Наши родственники в Америке. 15. — Хелен, подойди сюда! Сколько тебе лет? — Пять. — У тебя есть любимчик? — Да, у меня есть собака. — Это он или она? — Это он. — Как его зовут? — Его зовут Бим. — А сколько ему лет? — Ему 7 месяцев, но он умный и хороший. 16. — Это ваша машина? — Нет, моя машина новая и хорошая. Ей всего один год. 17. У него много родственников в Москве? 18. Муж моей сестры — юрист, его хобби — спорт.

*XII. Listen to the text and speak about Steve's family:*

My name's Steve. This is my family. This is my father and this is my mother. My father is fifty-five and my mother is forty-eight. — And who is this? — This man is my father's brother, he is my uncle. My mother is a housewife. And this is my mother's sister. She is my aunt, her name is Helen. — And what is your uncle's name? — His name is Peter. He is a worker and his wife is an engineer. These are my two sisters: Ann and Jane. Ann is my elder sister, she is twenty-three, she is married, her husband is a lawyer. Jane is my younger sister, she is only sixteen, she is in high school. — And who is this man? — He is my brother. His name is Robert. He is twenty-one, he is at the university. He is always very busy at the university and at home. He is my father's favourite son. His hobby is reading. And this is my sister Ann's little daughter, she is only two. Her name is Alice. And this is their pet — a dog named Rex. Rex is one year old but he is very clever.

*XIII. Read the text and reproduce it in Russian:*

Let me introduce myself. My name is David Nelson. I was born (родился) in London, but now I live in California, in the USA. I am a TV news reporter. I work for a small newspaper and I really like my work, because it is very interesting. I meet many interesting people every day.

I come from a large family. My father has a farm in the North of England and he is very busy with the work on the farm. My mother is a housewife. She has a lot of work to do about the house and she is very busy too. Every summer I go to see my parents and my relatives. I have two sisters and one brother. My elder sister is twenty-six. She is married and has a son Nick. He is six and is in the first grade at school. My sister is a doctor, and her husband is a lawyer. It is a well-paid job and he makes a lot of money. My younger sister's name is Ann. She is twenty and is in her first year at Oxford University. My brother Ted who is fifteen lives with my parents. He is in high school. He wants to become an economist, but I'm afraid it is only a dream because he is rather lazy and my mom and dad have a lot of problems with him.

Now a few words about myself. I'm twenty-four. I am married and have a family of my own. My wife Jane is twenty-three, she is a school teacher but she doesn't work now because we have a baby, she is only seven months old. So we are three in my family and we get on very well with each other.

*XIV. Read and reproduce the jokes:*

1. A two-year old Nick asks: "What's your last name, Annie?"

Annie, who is four, says: "Don't know yet; I am not married."

2. *John:* How old are you, Kate?

*Kate:* I'm not old. I'm young.

*John:* All right. How young are you?

*Kate:* I'm five.

### XV. Things to do:

1. You want to get a job. Fill in this:

1. Name .....
2. Family name .....
3. Place of birth .....
4. Country (Where do you live?) .....
5. City .....
6. Age (How old are you?) .....
7. Profession (occupation) .....
8. Married or single .....
9. Children .....
10. Your wife's (husband's) occupation .....
11. Your hobby .....
12. What kind of job would you like to have? .....

2. Speak about yourself. Begin with: "Let me introduce myself. My name is ... . I'm ... years old. I'm a ... . I have a ... family. My wife (husband) is a ... . My son (daughter) is a ... ."

3. Ask your new friend about his (her) family.

4. Speak about these families:



*XVI. Poems and songs to enjoy:***1. I Have a Doll**

I have a doll, I have a book,	I have a cat, I have a dog,
I have a big white ball,	I have a big red ball,
I have a ring, I have a toy,	I have a car, I have a wheel,
I have a place for all.	I'm glad to have them all.

♩ 2.

Well, my father has a sister,  
And her name's Patricia Grand,  
And her children are my cousins,  
And their mother is my aunt.

Well, my father has a sister,  
And her name's Patricia Grand,  
And her husband is my uncle,  
And his wife, well, that's my aunt.

Well, my father has a sister.  
And her name's Patricia Grand,  
And her brother is my father,  
And his sister is my aunt.

And my aunt has got a brother,  
And her brother's name is Chris,  
And his wife, well, that's my mother,  
Can you tell me who Chris is?



2. Do not disturb.
3. Dad's a good driver.
4. Don't take it close to heart.
5. Don't trouble trouble till trouble troubles you.

- VIII. 1. Rack your brains.  
2. It's rather strange.  
3. The river is running dry.

IX. There was a little girl  
And she had a little curl  
Right in the middle of her forehead.  
When she was good,  
She was very, very good,  
But when she was bad  
She was horrid.

(H.W. Longfellow)

### O Vocabulary

picture — картина, фотография	beautiful — красивый
head — голова; глава	well-built — хорошо сложенный
face — лицо	strong — сильный
nose — нос	funny — смешной, забавный
ear — ухо	eye — глаз
forehead — лоб	blue-eyed — голубоглазый
legs — ноги	hair — волосы (Her hair is blond.)
long-legged — длинноногий	dark/fair-haired — темно/светло-волосый
hand — рука (кисть)	curly hair — вьющиеся волосы
arm — рука (от кисти до плеча)	round — круглый
short — короткий	pleasant (unpleasant) — приятный (неприятный)
small — маленький	kind — добрый
large — большой	like (unlike) — как, похожий (в отличие от)
slim — худой, стройный, изящный	to look like — выглядеть как
pretty — хорошенькая	
handsome — красивый (о мужчине)	

## UNIT III

### MY NEW FRIENDS

Grammar: The Present Indefinite Tense.

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I.	[ɜ:]	II.	[ɜ:] — [ɔ:]	III.	[t]	IV.	[r]
	her		her — horn		take		red
	heard		bird — board		tie		read
	bird		pearl — Paul		tin		risk
	burst		work — walk		ten		rid
	first		first — form		team		rat
	verb		turn — torn		tree		room
	word		curl — call		try		rank
	world						bread
	work						dress
	curl						dream
	girl						

- V. 1. A dog; a hot dog; a big hot dog; a nice big hot dog.  
2. A daughter; a little daughter; a pretty little daughter;  
have a pretty little daughter; they have a pretty little daughter.

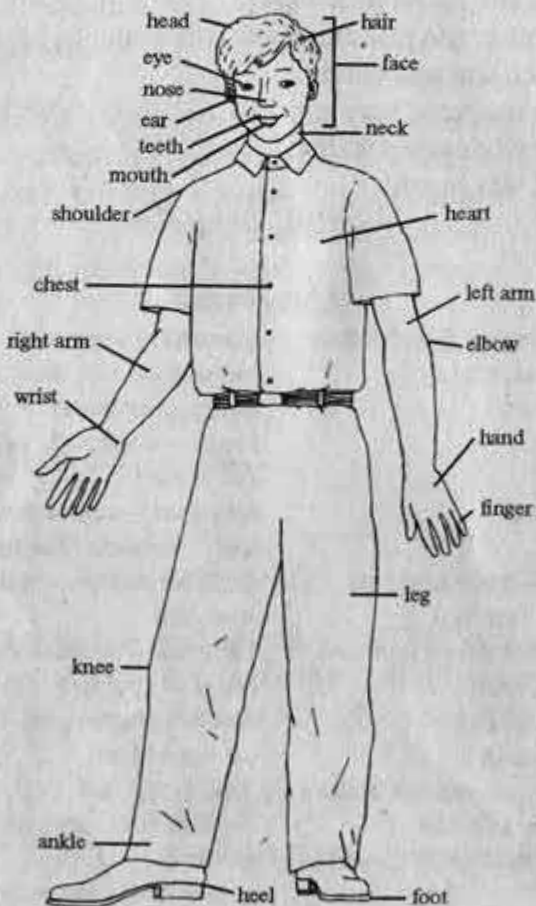
- VI. 1. Sir, can I come first? — Certainly, sir.  
2. First come, first served.  
3. Live and learn!

- VII. 1. Take it easy.

to be like — походить  
 to smile — улыбаться  
 smile — улыбка  
 to know — знать  
 to walk — ходить; гулять  
 to learn — учить, узнавать  
 to play (tennis) — играть (в теннис)  
 to run — бегать

to see — видеть  
 to cook — готовить, стряпать  
 to live — жить  
 to study — учиться  
 to speak (English, Russian) — говорить (по-английски, по-русски)  
 to come to see — навещать  
 to like — любить, хорошо относиться

### Parts of the Body



*Text*

## MY NEW FRIENDS

My new friends are the Millers. Mrs. Miller's name is Ann. She is a young woman of 32. She is tall, slim, with long blond hair and large blue eyes. She is very beautiful. Her husband's name is Jack, he is handsome, too. He isn't very tall, but well-built. His hair is dark and his eyes are grey. They have a pretty little daughter, she is 5, her name is Sally. She is fair-haired and blue-eyed, she looks like her mother. Her face is round.

Ann's mother, Sally's granny, lives with them. She is 56, she is a housewife. She is pleasant and kind. She likes to cook, play tennis and walk with Sally.

Sally knows many poems and likes to walk with Joy. Joy is their dog. She is brown, has short legs, a small nose and long ears. She is very funny. She likes to run after Sally about the garden. She does not like cats.

The Millers are a happy family, and I am happy that they are my friends.

What do they do? — *Чем они занимаются? Что они делают?*

I see. — *Понятно.*

What does she look like? — *Как она выглядит?*

to go out to parties — *ходить на вечеринки*

Why? — *А что?*

And what about Mr...? — *А что насчет мистера ...? А как мистер ...?*

the Millers — *семья Миллеров, Миллеры*

☺☺ *Dialogues*

1. — Do you often see the Browns?  
— Yes, I do.

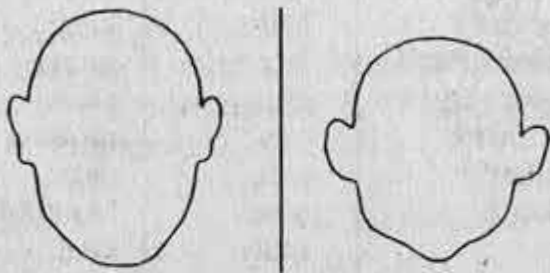
— Well, she likes to dance, to sing songs, to go out to parties...

— And what does your son like?

— Oh, he doesn't like to dance, he doesn't like to sing songs and he doesn't like to go out.

— And what does he like then?

— He likes to read books, to cook and to work in the garden.



What does he/she look like?

### Exercises

I. Choose the words to describe the girl and the man:

1. She is a very **pretty girl**.

She has: long hair, blue eyes, short legs, a long nose, curly hair, large eyes, grey hair,...

2. He is a **handsome young man**.

He is: short, tall, long-legged, slim, brown-haired, blue-eyed, fat, well-built,...

II. Describe a person using these words:

**a girl** (nice, pretty, long/short-haired, fair/dark-haired, blond, blue/brown-eyed, slim, fat, long-legged, has a small nose, a pleasant smile, etc.)

**a man** (a young man, a boy, handsome, long-legged, strong, well-built, tall, short, dark/fair-haired,



She is my son's girlfriend.

— What do they do?

— He is a doctor and works at the hospital all day.

— And what about his wife, Mrs. Brown?

— Oh, she doesn't work now, she has a baby.

— I see.

2. — Where is your son?

— He's in the garden with his new girlfriend.

— Is she pretty?

— Oh, yes, she is!

— What does she look like?

— She's tall, slim, fair-haired and long-legged, like all young girls now.

— Do you like her?

— I don't know her very well.

3. — Hello! Is that you, Nick?

— Yes, Ann.

— Please, meet my brother Peter at the station tomorrow.

— I don't know him. What does he look like?

— He is tall like me and well-built.

— What colour is his hair?

— It's dark, and he is handsome unlike me.

— And what colour are his eyes?

— They are big and grey.

4. — Hi, Mary! Is your son at home?

— Yes, he is. Why?

— I want to introduce him to my daughter's friend. Alice is 18 and she's very pretty.

— Is she? And what does she like to do?

has brown eyes, a big nose, long arms, short-cut hair, etc.)

**a woman** (young, good-looking, pleasant, kind, beautiful, slim, grey/dark-haired, etc.)

### III. Describe your relatives.

**Model:** My daughter's eyes are blue.

My wife's	eyes	grey
My husband's	hair	long
Your grandfather's	face	round
Your sister's	arms	short
Your brother's	legs	pleasant
My mother's	ears	nice
My father's	nose	beautiful
Her	smile	kind
His	head	strong
Your son's	manners	blue
Your daughter's		dark
		funny
		happy

### IV. Read the following and answer the questions:

I come into the office and see a smiling man. He has a paper in his hand.

"I hope you will like her," he says. "It's a very nice office but the chair in which I sit is not too comfortable."

The door in the next room opens and a young woman comes in. She is pretty. She is really pretty.

"Mr. Walker, this is Miss Franklin. Hello."

"Hello," she says.

"I'm pleased to meet you," I say.

"I'm glad too," she smiles. She has a very pleasant smile and beautiful small teeth. She is very shy (застенчивая).

"I'm twenty-five," I say.

"Yes, I know," she says.

There is really not much to talk about. I know that she likes classical music.

"Do you like classical music?" I ask her.

"Yes, I do. I have a good collection of records," she says. She likes music, books, dogs, cats, art and so on.

"I think we like the same things," I say.

"I am glad you don't drink or smoke," she says. "We are very much alike."

Alice and I are married now. We live in a small house near London. She is a good wife and I hope I'm not a very bad husband either. We are a very happy family.

◆ **Questions:**

1. Who does he see in the office?
2. What has the man in his hand?
3. Who comes in?
4. What does Miss Franklin look like?
5. Does she like classical or pop music?
6. Does he smoke or drink?
7. Where do they live now?
8. Alice is a good wife, isn't she?
9. Is he a good husband?
10. Are they a happy family?

*V. Read and reproduce the dialogue:*

**A FAMILY ALBUM**

- Look at our family album!
- With pleasure.
- Here it is.
- Who are these people?



— They are our grandparents. This man and this woman are my parents. These are my mother-in-law and my father-in-law.

— I see. Your father is very handsome. Your mother is very young and beautiful in this picture.

— Yes, she is, she is not old yet. She is only 50.

— And who is in this picture? Is he your son?

— No, he isn't. He is my nephew. And this is my daughter.

— Oh, such a nice girl! How old is she?

— She's seven. She is a schoolgirl.

— What a lovely face! Who's that?

— That is my wife's cousin. She is a student.

— This is a very old photograph. Who's this funny little baby? A boy, isn't it?



Who are these people?

- Yes, and a very big boy now.
- Oh, it's not you, is it?
- But it is!

*VI. Give short answers:*

1. Do you speak English? — Yes ...  
Do you speak German? — No ...
2. Do you often go to the cinema? — Yes ...  
Do you often go to the theatre? — No ...
3. Do you like dogs? — Yes ...  
Do you like cats? — No ...
4. Does your friend like music? — Yes ...  
Does he like to cook? — No ...
5. Does your cat like dogs? — No ...  
Is your wife pretty? — Yes ...

*VII. Ask questions for these answers:*

1. My sister likes **books**. (What?)
2. He studies **at the university**. (Where?)
3. Her mother is a **school teacher**. (What?)
4. She has got a **beautiful new car**. (What?)
5. I go **to the university** every day. (Where?)
6. Our granny is **65**. (How old?)
7. Her eyes are **dark blue**. (What colour?)
8. We go to a party **at the weekend**. (When?)

*VIII. Ask questions and give short answers:*

**Model:** study, university. — **Who studies at the university?**  
— **I (you, we, they) do. He (she) does.**

1. come to see us, every day.
2. cook, in your family.
3. work, in the garden.
4. know, French and English.
5. go, often, to parties.
6. play, sports.
7. have got, thick hair.
8. look like, mother.
9. have got, English books.
10. like, small children.
11. live, in London.
12. sing, very well.

*IX. Use the words in the right form:*

to play, to go (2), to like (4), to cook, to live, to have, to work, to study, to see, to be (2).

I ... at the University. I ... to the University every day. I ... to learn English and I ... sports. I don't ... to learn poems and to write tests. I often ... to the cinema or theatre. I often ... my friends. Sometimes I ... tennis with my aunt. She ... to play with me. Every day she ... in the garden and ... for me. She ... happy that she ... with me. I ... happy that I ... such a nice aunt.

*X. Use the right form of the verb:*

1. We (to learn) English at the University. 2. I (to like) music and pictures. 3. She (to play) tennis very well. 4. They (to live) in London? 5. My friend (to work) at an office. 6. He (not to walk) much. 7. Ann (to know) many songs. 8. Ben (to go out) to parties every weekend. 9. He (to be) a handsome boy? 10. She (to have) many friends at the University.

*XI. Translate into English:*

1. — Вы любите музыку? — Да, очень. Я люблю петь и танцевать. А вы? — А я люблю спорт. 2. — Она изучает французский? — Нет, она изучает английский. 3. — Чем занимается ваш сын? — Он студент. — Да? Сколько ему лет? — Ему 20. 4. Подружка моего брата маленькая, стройная и худая, она очень похожа на свою маму. 5. — Как выглядит ваш брат? — Он высокий, длинноногий, у него короткие вьющиеся волосы, темные глаза. Он симпатичный. 6. Твоя племянница хорошенькая, у нее красивые глаза и приятная улыбка. 7. Ваш сын похож на вас, он тоже любит классическую музыку. 8. — Твой папа любит смотреть телевизор? — Нет, он любит играть в футбол, как все мужчины. 9. Моя дочь сейчас замужем. Они с мужем часто навещают нас. Ее муж приятный, умный и добрый. Он нам нравится. 10. — Ваши дедушка и бабушка живут с вами? — Нет, они живут не в Москве. 11. — Она

любит ходить на вечеринки? — Нет, она любит читать. 12. — Кто это? — Это мои родственники! — Понятно. Этот молодой человек очень похож на тебя. — Это мой двоюродный брат. Он живет с нами. 13. Мы работаем в саду каждый день. 14. — Кто любит готовить в вашей семье? — Наш папа. 15. — Кто не любит собак? — Кошки.

*XII. Answer the questions:*

A. 1. What do you do every day? 2. What does your friend do every day? 3. What do you like to do? 4. What does your pet like to do? 5. What does your friend like to do?

B. 1. What relatives do you have? What does your mother (father, aunt, uncle) look like? 2. Are you married or single? What does your wife (husband) look like? 3. Have you got any children? What do they look like? 4. Have you got a girl/boyfriend? Is she/he good-looking? 5. Have you got pets at home? What do they look like?

*XIII. Listen to the text and reproduce it:*

This is a picture of Mary Jackson. She is my friend. She is a film star. Mary is 24. She is young and beautiful. She has very

thick blond hair

and big green eyes.

She has a pretty

face. She is tall and

slim. Mary likes to

sing and she dances

very well. She likes

to go out to parties

with her friends.

She does not like to

give interviews.

Mary speaks

French, Spanish



She is a film star.

— Yes, of course, I do. I know her aunts and her uncles and her brother, too.

3. Meet me in the morning.  
Meet me at noon,  
Meet me in September,  
Or in the middle of June.  
Meet me at midnight,  
Meet me in the hall,  
Meet me in the summer,  
Meet me in the fall.  
Meet me in the evening,  
Meet me at 8.  
I'll meet you any time you want,  
But, please, don't be late.

4. Do you speak English? — Yes, I do.  
Do you play tennis? — Yes, I do.  
Do you like music? — Yes, I do.  
Oh, yes, I do.  
Do you speak Swedish? — No, I don't.  
Do you play cricket? — No, I don't.  
Do you like apples? — No, I don't.  
Oh, no I don't.

5. Does Tom play the drums? — Yes, he does.  
Does he read comics? — Yes, he does.  
Does he like horses? — Yes, he does.  
Oh, yes, he does.  
Does Tom collect stamps? — No, he doesn't.  
Does he play the piano? — No, he doesn't.  
Does he write letters? — No, he doesn't.  
Oh, no, he doesn't.

6. What does Daisy do on Mondays?  
She looks after Mary.  
What does Daisy do on Tuesdays?

and Russian. She is not married and she has many boyfriends. She lives in Hollywood, she has five cars and a nice big house. She is very happy.

### XI. Things to do:

1. Your family wants to know all about your groupmates. Describe them.
2. Describe your favourite actor/actress.
3. Describe your sister or brother to someone who wants to meet her or him.
4. You've just met a most handsome man. Describe him to your friend.
5. Your friend tells you that he/she is going to get married. Ask him/her about his/her girl/boyfriend.
6. Your dog is missing. Describe it to your neighbour who wants to help you find it.

### XII. Poems and songs to enjoy:

#### 1. OUR FAMILY

Our large family	We help one another—
Has a nice flat.	It is a good rule.
We live there happily	We help our mother
With a kitten and cat.	When she washes and cooks.
My sisters and brothers	Together with father
All go to school.	We like to read books.

2. — Do you know Mary?  
 — Mary? Who?  
 — Mary McDonald?  
 — Of course, I do.  
 — Do you know her sister Betty?  
 — Yes, of course, I do. I know her elder sister Betty and her younger sister Sue.  
 — Do you know her husband Bobby?  
 — Yes, of course, I do. I know her husband and her cousin, too.  
 — Do you know her aunt Erik?



She goes out with Martin.

What does Michael do on Wednesday?

He goes to the boys' club.

What does Michael do on Thursdays?

He plays cards with Simon.



## UNIT IV

### A LETTER FROM MY LONDON FRIEND

**Grammar:** Вводное *there* с глаголом *to be*.  
Some, any, no и их производные.  
Much, many, little, few.  
Предлоги места и направления.

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

- |         |         |               |          |
|---------|---------|---------------|----------|
| I. [ɑ:] | II. [ʌ] | III. [ɑ:] [ʌ] | IV. [aʊ] |
| are     | come    | dark — duck   | how      |
| arm     | some    | bark — buck   | cow      |
| bar     | but     | bard — bud    | house    |
| car     | cut     | cart — cut    | mouse    |
| farm    | cup     | last — lust   | round    |
| hard    | under   | barn — bun    | count    |
| fast    | hurry   | farm — fun    | loud     |
| class   | mummy   | hard — hut    | about    |
| carpet  | double  | drama — drum  | mountain |
- 
- |            |          |                   |
|------------|----------|-------------------|
| V. 1. [tw] | 2. [kw]  | VI. Not to worry, |
| twin       | quick    | Not to hurry,     |
| twist      | quiz     | Not to carry.     |
| twenty     | quest    |                   |
| twelve     | quack    |                   |
| twice      | question |                   |

- VII. 1. She's art and part of the party.  
2. Shan't we dance after classes?

3. Come to lunch.  
 There comes the bus. Hurry up!
4. How now, brown cow?
5. Mr. Brown, are you going down town?

*VIII.* Mother, father, sister, brother,  
 Hand in hand with one another.

*IX.* If a twist twists a twister  
 and the twist that twists the twister  
 untwists the twister,  
 what becomes of the twist?

*X.* Mister Brown, Mister Brown,  
 Are you going down town?  
 Could you stop and take me down?  
 Thank you kindly, Mister Brown.

*XI.* Twinkle, twinkle, little star,  
 How I wonder what you are.  
 Up above the world so high  
 Like a diamond in the sky.

### O Vocabulary

<b>flat</b> — квартира	<b>cold</b> — холодный
<b>block of flats</b> — многоквартирный дом	<b>warm</b> — теплый
<b>building</b> — здание	<b>spacious</b> — просторный
<b>two-storey building</b> — двухэтажное здание	<b>furniture</b> — мебель
<b>brick building</b> — кирпичный дом	<b>sofa</b> — диван, софа
<b>floor</b> — пол; этаж	<b>desk</b> — письменный стол
<b>on the ground floor</b> — на первом этаже	<b>chair</b> — стул
(англ.)	<b>armchair</b> — кресло
<b>on the first floor</b> — на втором	<b>mirror</b> — зеркало
этаже (англ.)	<b>dressing table</b> — туалетный
<b>upstairs</b> — наверху; вверх	столик

<b>downstairs</b> — внизу; вниз	<b>wardrobe</b> — гардероб
<b>wall</b> — стена	<b>bookcase</b> — книжный шкаф
<b>window</b> — окно	<b>cupboard</b> — сервант, кухонный шкаф
<b>sitting room</b> — гостиная	<b>carpet</b> — ковер
<b>dining room</b> — столовая	<b>to have dinner</b> — обедать
<b>bedroom</b> — спальня	<b>to have guests</b> — принимать гостей
<b>study (room)</b> — кабинет	<b>to watch TV</b> — смотреть телевизор
<b>bathroom</b> — ванная комната	<b>to stay (at) home</b> — оставаться дома
<b>kitchen</b> — кухня	<b>to heat</b> — отапливать
<b>fridge</b> (разг. от refrigerator) — холодильник	<b>central heating</b> — центральное отопление
<b>favourite</b> — любимый	<b>to face</b> (a garden) — выходить (в сад)
<b>comfortable</b> — удобный	<b>in the middle (of)</b> — посредине
<b>cosy</b> — уютный	<b>in the corner</b> — в углу
<b>light</b> — свет; светлый	<b>on the left/right</b> — слева/справа
<b>fireplace</b> — камин	<b>in front of</b> — перед
	<b>behind</b> — сзади, за, позади

#### A LETTER FROM MY LONDON FRIEND

This is a picture of my house. It is a big house. Like many English houses it is a two-storey brick building with a garden around it. On the ground floor we have a sitting room, a dining room and a kitchen. The kitchen is rather big and comfortable. My daughter Alice helps me to cook in the kitchen.

When we have guests we have dinner in the dining room. After dinner we usually go to the sitting room. Our sitting room is very cosy. There isn't much furniture in it. There is a sofa opposite the fireplace and two armchairs near it. There are some pictures on the walls. In the middle of the room there is a big carpet. We have a TV set in the corner. Father likes to watch TV in the evenings.

Our bedrooms are upstairs, on the first floor. There are not many things in our bedroom. There are only two beds, a mirror, a dressing table and a wardrobe in it. We have two bedrooms for guests. They are rather small. Our bedrooms are

## ☺☹ Dialogues

1. *Ann:* I say, Alice, do you live in a flat?  
*Alice:* Yes, I do, but it's my parents' flat; I only have a room which is my own.  
*Ann:* Is the flat large?  
*Alice:* Rather. We have three bedrooms, a sitting room, a kitchen, a hall and a bathroom. My room is not very large, but very comfortable. There is not much furniture in it. On the left there is a sofa and a small table near it. At the window there is a desk. On the right there is a dressing table. Near it there is a wardrobe for my clothes.
2. *Jack:* Hello, Pete!  
*Pete:* Nice to see you. Come in, please.  
*Jack:* Oh, this is a wonderful new flat!  
*Pete:* Yes, it is, and so close to the centre.  
*Jack:* How many rooms are there in your flat?  
*Pete:* Come and see... This is the kitchen, the bathroom is on the right.  
*Jack:* Oh, the kitchen is so large! I like big kitchens.  
*Pete:* And here is the dining room. We have little furniture here. We want to have some armchairs, a sofa and some more things.  
*Jack:* Are you on the phone?\*
*Pete:* It's a pity, we aren't yet... Let me introduce you to my wife.  
*Pete's wife:* How do you do. I hope you'll enjoy our housewarming party.
3. — Hello!  
 — Hello!  
 — I'm looking for a room. Are you the landlady?\*\*\*

\* Are you on the phone? — У вас есть телефон?

\*\* landlady — хозяйка дома

cold. In winter we heat them because there is no central heating. Few people have central heating in their own houses.

My husband's study room is downstairs. It faces the garden. It is light and spacious. There are a lot of books in the bookcases and a lot of paper on the desk. There is also a computer on his desk. There are a few chairs in his room. It is my husband's favourite room.

I like my house. It is my home.

---

I have a room of my own. — У меня своя (отдельная) комната.  
 so close [klaus] to the centre — так близко от центра  
 a housewarming party — новоселье  
 to move to a new flat — переехать на новую квартиру  
 It's a great pity. — Очень жаль! Какая жалость!  
 I'm looking for a room. — Я ищу комнату.



This is our sitting room.

- Yes, I am. Come in, please.  
 — I want a room for the summer.  
 — Yes, I have one vacant room at the end of the hall.  
 Come with me if you want to see it.  
 — Is there any furniture?  
 — Yes, there is everything you want: a sofa, two armchairs, a table, there is a carpet on the floor. Do you want anything else?  
 — No, thank you. Where is the bathroom?  
 — It is on the second floor, upstairs, and the kitchen is across the hall.  
 — Thank you. How much is it?\*

— Five hundred dollars a month.

### Exercises

#### *I. Use the right word from those given in brackets:*

1. There is a ... in my study room. (table, kitchen, desk)
2. Is there any ... in that room? (cooker, furniture, fridge)
3. There is no ... in the house, it is cold in winter. (mirror, fireplace, telephone)
4. Is there ... in your kitchen? (hot water, garage, computer)
5. There is no balcony in my ... . (garden, room, bathroom)
6. There are two large ... in the sitting room. (TV sets, wardrobes, windows)
7. Is there a ... in your sitting room? (bath, desk, TV set)
8. We have a table and some ... in the dining room. (chairs, bookshelves, beds)
9. Have you any bookshelves in your ...? (kitchen, garden, study room)
10. They have no ... on Sunday. (visitors, teachers, students)
11. They have two ... near the fireplace. (beds, armchairs, tables)
12. ... the sofa he has a bookcase. (under, to the right of, over)

#### *II. Finish the following:*

1. We have four ... in our new ... .

---

\* How much is it? — Сколько это стоит?

2. My wife has a lot of things on ... in her bedroom.
3. They have no ... in the sitting room.
4. She has ... in her bedroom.
5. In front of the house there is ... .
6. There is ... in his study room.
7. There are a lot of books ... .
8. They have a garden behind their ... .
9. My bedroom faces ... .
10. Our bedrooms are ... .
11. When we get up in the morning we go to ... .
12. If you want to make coffee go to ... .
13. In the evening our father likes to watch TV in ... .
14. In the corner of her room there is ... .
15. Our flat is on ... .

### III. Use prepositions or adverbs:

Mr. Foster is a young man. He is married and has two children. He plays cricket and football ... his local club and works ... an office. He usually walks ... his office. He has lunch ... a small restaurant ... his office.

Mr. Foster's office is not very large. There is a desk ... it and some chairs. ... the desk there is a shelf ... books and ... the centre ... the room there is a table. There is a vase ... flowers on it. ... the walls ... his room there are some pictures and a map.

... his desk there is a box ... which there are some old Roman coins; nobody uses them for money now. Mr. Foster collects them.

### IV. Answer the questions:

1. Have you got a flat? 2. What floor is your flat on? 3. Is there a lift in your house? 4. Is your flat large? 5. Do you live with your parents? 6. How many rooms are there in your flat? 7. Have you a sitting room? 8. Have you got a separate bedroom? 9. Is your kitchen large? 10. What is your favourite place

in the flat? 11. Do you like to stay at home with your family?  
12. Who likes to watch TV in your family?

V. Use "some," "any," "no":

1. I want to show you ... pictures. 2. There is ... coffee at home. 3. Are there ... bookshelves in your study room? 4. There are ... English students in our University. 5. Are there ... newspapers on his desk? 6. Have you got ... children? 7. Jane has ... brother or sisters. 8. Has he ... French magazines at home? — Yes, he has ... 9. I have ... friends in Britain. 10. We have ... pets at home.

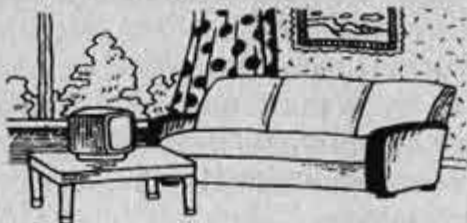
VI. Choose the right variant:

1.	I have	some something somebody	relatives in London.
2.	There is	some something somebody	at home.
3.	There is	some something somebody	interesting on TV tonight.
4.	Is there	any anything anybody	on this desk?
5.	Have they	any anything anybody	chairs in the kitchen?
6.	Is there	any anything anybody	in the bathroom?
7.	We have	no nothing nobody	friends in Paris.



## WHAT IS THERE IN YOUR FLAT?

There is a



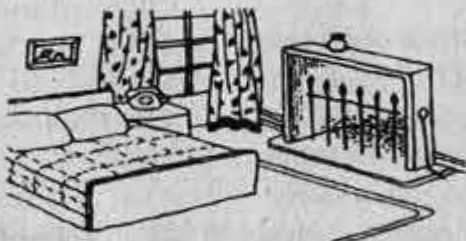
is my room.

There are some

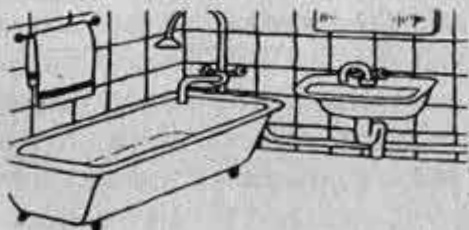


in his study room.

There isn't any

in my mother's  
bedroom.

There aren't any



in our bathroom.

Is there a



on the table?

8.	There is	no nothing nobody	in the fridge.
9.	There is	no nothing nobody	in the house.

VII. Use "some," "any," "no," "something," "anything," "nothing," "somebody," "anybody," "nobody":

1. Do you have ... classes today? — No, we have ... classes on Saturday. 2. Have you got ... questions? 3. I want to tell you ... interesting about our friend Sally. 4. Is there ... interesting in today's paper? 5. Come here, I'll show you ... pictures of our country house. 6. There is ... in the fridge. Go and get ... food. 7. Do you know ... in that house? 8. Hi! Is there ... in the house? — No, I'm afraid, there is ... . — Let's go and see. 9. There is light in the flat. ... is at home. 10. ... knows their new address.

VIII. Practise aloud:

- A.
- |                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| There is little  | light in the kitchen.          |
| There isn't much | furniture in the sitting room. |
|                  | paper on the table.            |
|                  | food in the fridge.            |
|                  | time before dinner.            |
|                  | money in my bag.               |
|                  | bread on the table.            |
- B.
- |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| There are few     | books on the shelf.                |
| There aren't many | shelves in the study room.         |
|                   | tables in the classroom.           |
|                   | chairs in the dining room.         |
|                   | people here.                       |
|                   | buildings in this street.          |
|                   | students from London in our group. |

*IX. Make up questions and answer them. Use the models:*

**Model A:** bread, table — **Is there any bread on the table?**

— **Yes, there is.**

**How much is there? — There's a lot.**

1. furniture, sitting room
2. paper, table
3. food, fridge
4. money, bag
5. milk, bottle
6. water, glass.

**Model B:** books, shelf — **Are there any books on the shelf?**

— **Yes, there are.**

**How many are there?**

— **There are a lot.**

1. shelves, classroom
2. books, shelf
3. buildings, street
4. hairs, dining room
5. tables, room
6. people, garden.

*X. Use "much," "many," "little," "few":*

1. I am busy now. I have ... time.
2. We know ... English and American songs.
3. There is not ... milk in the fridge.
4. There are ... rooms in the house.
5. Does she read ... ?
6. Are there ... bedrooms in your house?
7. ... people know Chinese.
8. ... people learn English.
9. Nick has ... English books but very ... Russian books.
10. There is ... light in that room, because there are ... windows in it.
11. She talks ... , but does ... .
12. Is there ... or ... furniture in your new flat?

*XI. Use "few", "little," "a few," "a little":*

1. There is ... light in the bathroom. It is dark.
2. We have ... relatives, only a grandmother and an uncle.
3. I know ... people who like to stay at home.
4. We have very ... time.
5. There are ... rooms in their flat.
6. He speaks Chinese ... and knows ... words in Japanese.
7. Wait ... .
8. Has he got many English books? — No, only ... .

*XII. Translate into English:*

1. — У вас большая квартира? — Нет, она небольшая, но очень удобная. 2. — Сколько комнат в твоей новой квартире? — Три: гостиная, кабинет и спальня. 2. Кухня — мое любимое место. Она очень уютная. В кухне стол у окна, два стула, холодильник и телевизор. Я люблю смотреть телевизор, когда готовлю. 4. — В квартире есть мебель? — Да, есть стол, диван, два кресла, несколько стульев и книжный шкаф. 5. В доме центральное отопление, но внизу есть также камин. 6. На верхнем этаже просторная ванная комната, в ней большое зеркало и туалетный столик. 7. Квартира темная. В ней мало окон, окна выходят в сад, и мало света. 8. В гостиной много мебели: диван, несколько кресел, много стульев, в углу телевизор. 9. — В холодильнике есть что-нибудь? — Ничего нет. 10. В комнате никого нет, но кто-то есть на кухне. 11. — В доме есть телефон? — Да, есть, он на стене. 12. Я знаю много английских и американских песен. 13. В комнате деда много интересных вещей. 14. Мало семей имеют много детей. 15. — Сколько у нас хлеба? — Много. 16. Что находится справа и слева от окна? 17. В вазе цветы, а воды нет.

*XIII. Read the texts, ask questions about them and render them:*

A.

**The Victoria Hotel**

The Victoria is a large and comfortable hotel in the centre of Oxford. It has 66 double rooms and 43 single rooms, all with private bathrooms. There are two restaurants, a coffee shop, a bar, and a beautiful lounge\*. All the bedrooms have colour television, telephones and central heating. The hotel has a lift and a car park.

---

\* lounge [laʊndʒ] — *комната для отдыха*

**B. The Grandfather**

My grandfather has a room all to himself. It is at the end of a long hall away from our rooms. Mother says it is good for him to be alone because it gives him time to himself. But I don't understand why he wants to sit by himself in his chair in the middle of the room. My grandfather calls me Pete though I am a six-year-old girl, because he says I am smart\* as any boy.

I like to come into my granddad's room before I go to my bedroom at night. There are so many interesting things in his room. There is a bookcase full of interesting books and magazines with pictures.

Sometimes our neighbours come to see my granddad. Then he comes out to the sitting room to meet them and they sit at the big round table in the middle of the room, they have tea and talk. I like my neighbours, only one of them speaks very loudly and always goes to the kitchen to wash up the tea things. I don't really like her.

**XIV. Read the advertisements and describe the flats to let:****To Let**

A separate flat facing the river, on the second floor, central heating, hot water, a bathroom, a big kitchen, a spacious living room with three large windows, a bedroom. All the rooms are furnished and in perfect order. The landlady is middle-aged, friendly, kind, hard-working, always willing to help. The rent is 100 dollars a month.

\* \* \*

A separate room on the 5th floor for a single man, with furniture and a separate bathroom. There is a desk, three chairs, a sofa, a TV set and a bookcase. The telephone is in the

---

\* smart — умный

hall. There is no lift. The room is small but warm and cosy. The rent is only 50 dollars a month.

XV. Listen to the text and describe:

- a) Jacky's life,
- b) her flat.

### A Letter Home

Dear Mum and Dad,

I live now in my own flat. It is very comfortable. It is a bit small and the rent is high. But they say, I am lucky to have it. It is quite a problem to find a place to live here. I have my own bedroom and bathroom. The kitchen is very cosy. There is a common room which I use as a sitting room too.

The flat has central heating and double doors and windows — so I will not be cold in winter. And it has a balcony with a view of the sea\*.

I already know one of the neighbours, an old lady Mrs. Jones. Her house is across the street from mine. Her husband comes from Finland, he is Finnish, but he speaks very good English. They sometimes invite me for a cup of tea, and I like to have a quiet evening at their place. Mrs. Jones is a wonderful cook and a good housewife. She keeps her house in perfect order.

The Joneses have no relatives in Finland but they have a lot of friends there and sometimes visit them.

Among other neighbours I know there are the Thomsons. They are also from the United States. They are about thirty, very friendly and sociable\*\*.

Mrs. Thomson is an architect and her husband is a businessman. When I have some problem I turn to them and they always help me. They are my next-door neighbours but I don't

---

\* with a view of the sea — с видом на море

\*\* sociable — общительный

see very much of them because Mr. Thomson is at work the whole day and sometimes he doesn't come till late at night.

Anyhow, I'm quite all right here. Please, don't worry about me. I spend a lot of time in the library and come home only in the evening. Do you know how much I miss\* my home and you? Does Steve ever come to see you? I hope to hear from you soon.

All my love,

Jacky.

*XVI. Read and reproduce the jokes:*

1. *Nick:* Does your mother give you anything when you are good?

*Tom:* No, but she gives me something when I am bad.

2. *Daughter:* I want to be a teacher.

*Mother:* But you don't know anything to be a teacher.

*Daughter:* That doesn't matter\*\*. Teachers don't know anything. They only ask a lot of questions.

3. *Daddy:* Isn't it time for little boys to go to bed?

*Bob:* I don't know, Daddy, because I have no children.

*XVII. Things to do:*

1. Write a letter to your friend about your new flat.

2. Your friend has a new country house (dacha) not far from Moscow. Describe it.

3. Draw a picture of your a) flat, b) room, and describe them.

4. Make up an advertisement about a flat or a house you want to let.

5. Speak about your dream house.

*XVIII. Poems and songs to enjoy:*

1. "Little grey mouse,  
Where is your house?"

\* to miss — *скучать*

\*\* That doesn't matter. — *Неважно.*

In the room in my house,  
It's a very fine table indeed.  
There's a chair by the table  
By the cupboard by the lamp  
By the bed in the room in my house,  
It's a very fine chair indeed.

4.

In front of my house there's a tree,  
My cat likes to climb it with me.  
In back of my house there's a hill  
Where I go hiking with Bill.

Next to my house there's a creek  
Where I catch fish every week.  
Across the road there's a lake  
Where I go swimming with Jake.

Near my house there's a park,  
I don't go there after dark.  
Around my house there's a lawn,  
On weekends I sit there till dawn.

On top of my house there's a nest,  
The bird living there's a pest.  
Under the porch there's a mouse,  
Sometimes it comes in the house.

Over the door there's a light,  
It helps you to find me at night.  
Inside my house there's lots more  
To see it just knock at my door.



"I can show you my flat  
 If you don't tell the cat.  
 My flat has no door,  
 I live under the floor.  
 I come out in the night  
 And go back when it's light."

## 2.

**The Key of the Kingdom**

This is the key of the kingdom.  
 In the kingdom there is a city,  
 In the city there is a town,  
 In the town there is a street,  
 In the street there is a yard,  
 In the yard there is a house,  
 In the house there is a room,  
 In the room there is a bed,  
 On the bed there is a basket,  
 In the basket there are some  
 flowers.

Flowers in the basket,  
 Basket on the bed,  
 Bed in the room,  
 Room in the house,  
 House in the yard,  
 Yard in the street,  
 Street in the town,  
 Town in the city,  
 City in the kingdom.  
 This is the key of the  
 kingdom.



## 3.

**In My Room**

There's a room in my house,  
 It's a very fine room,  
 It's a very fine room indeed.

There's a bed in the room,  
 In the room in my house,  
 It's a very fine bed indeed.

There's a lamp by the bed  
 In the room in my house,  
 It's a very fine lamp indeed.

There's a cupboard by the lamp  
 By the bed in the room in my house,  
 It's a very fine cupboard indeed.

There's a table by the cupboard  
 By the lamp by the bed

- V.
- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Time flies!        | 5. Name the day.       |
| 2. Mind your eye!     | 6. It may rain today.  |
| 3. My child's bright. | 7. Save your pains.    |
| 4. I quite like Mike. | 8. No pains, no gains. |

VI. Smile a while, and while you smile, others'll smile, and then there'll be miles of smiles.

VII.

There was a young lady of Niger,  
 Who smiled when she rode on a tiger.  
 They returned from the ride  
 With the lady inside  
 And the smile on the face of the tiger.

### U Vocabulary

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| clock — часы (стенные)                   | to be late (for) — опаздывать              |
| alarm clock — будильник                  | absent-minded — рассеянный                 |
| watch — наручные часы                    | to go by (bus) — ездить на (автобусе)      |
| as usual — как обычно                    | to get to work — добираться до работы      |
| than usual — чем обычно                  | to get on (a bus) сесть на автобус         |
| 15 minutes later — через 15 минут        | to get off (the bus) — выйти из (автобуса) |
| half — половина                          | to seem — казаться                         |
| quarter — четверть                       | to be tired — устать                       |
| except — кроме                           | to be alone — быть одному                  |
| to get up — вставать                     | to stay alone — остаться одному            |
| to wake up — просыпаться                 | on weekdays — по рабочим дням              |
| to ring — звонить, звенеть               | at the weekend — по выходным               |
| to lie — лежать                          | day off — выходной (нерабочий) день        |
| to start — начинать                      | to be in a hurry — спешить                 |
| to do morning exercises — делать зарядку | Hurry up! — Поторопись!                    |
| to wash — умываться; мыть                | to be sure — быть уверенным                |
| to wash up — мыть посуду                 |  |
| to clean teeth — чистить зубы            |  |
| to comb hair — причесываться             |  |

## UNIT V

### THE DAY'S WORK BEGINS

Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense.  
Предлоги времени.

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I. [aɪ]	II. [eɪ]	III. [e] — [eɪ]	[aɪ]	
my	name	pen — pain	mild	light
tie	came	men — main	child	right
life	game	get — gate	wild	might
five	pain	bet — bait	mind	bright
fine	day	wet — wait	kind	slight
ice	play	met — mate	find	fight
mice	stay	set — say	blind	night

#### IV.

1.	[t]	2.	— ed	3.	[ɪd]
	liked		rained		needed
	placed		stayed		ended
	parked		played		headed
	cooked		cleaned		decided
	walked		lived		wanted
	worked		called		heated
	washed		showed		knitted
	watched		turned		visited
			married		
			smiled		

to take things easy — смотреть на вещи просто	to understand — понимать
to arrive — прибывать, приезжать	to leave the house — выходить из дома
to begin — начинать(ся)	to leave for — уходить куда-л.
customer — покупатель; клиент	Take it easy! — Не принимай близко к сердцу!
to need money — нуждаться в деньгах	to go to bed — ложиться спать
to bang on the door — стучать в дверь	to go to sleep — засыпать
to jump out of bed — вскочить с кровати	to think — думать
to turn over — перевернуть(ся)	to spend — проводить (время)
	to want — хотеть
	job — работа

### THE DAY'S WORK BEGINS

Anna's alarm clock rang at a quarter past seven as usual. And, as usual, she lay in bed for another ten minutes. Then she got up, washed, cleaned her teeth and combed her hair. Then she had breakfast.

Anna likes to go to work by bus, it takes her twenty-five minutes to get to work by bus. When she got off the bus she walked to her office. She got there at a quarter to nine. Fifteen minutes later one of the office girls opened the main door. The first customer arrived. The day's work began.

Anna likes to take things easy, but Susan is always in a hurry, sometimes late and often absent-minded. Classes at the business college usually start at nine fifteen, except on Fridays, when the first class begins at ten.

Michael, her brother, usually bangs on her bedroom door at eight o'clock. He did so this morning. "All right," said Susan, but she just turned over and went to sleep again. At half past eight Michael went upstairs and banged on his sister's door again. Susan jumped out of bed, washed quickly and ran back to her room. She ran downstairs to the kitchen, but looked at her watch and understood that she didn't have time for breakfast. "Bye, mother," she said and ran out. Mrs. Bond

did the washing up. She had ten minutes before she had to leave for work. She sat down and smoked a cigarette. Suddenly the house seemed very lonely. She was glad that she had a job. Not because she needed money but she did not want to be alone all day in her house.

It takes her 25 minutes to get to work. — *Ей нужно 25 минут, чтобы до-ехать до работы.*

How long does it take you to...? — *Сколько тебе нужно (времени), что-бы...?*

It's all right. — *Ничего. Все в порядке.*

Oh, dear! (= Oh, my!) — *О господи! Боже мой!*

to have a good time — *хорошо проводить время*

### Dialogues

- Hello, Pete!  
— Hello, John!  
— I hope I didn't wake you up.  
— Yes, you did, but it's all right.
- How are you, Paul? I'm very glad to see you again.  
— I'm well, thank you.  
— I hope you had a good time yesterday.



... or the weekend. 9. We work five days a week: on ... , ... , ... , ... , and ... . 10. Our days off are ... and ... . 11. Some people have a day off on ... or some other day.

**B.** 1. The first month of the year is ... . 2. The second month of the year is ... . 3. The last month of the year is ... . 4. The month of June comes before the month of ... . 5. The month of May comes after the month of ... .

**C.** 1. Today is ... , the ... of ... . 2. Tomorrow is ... , the ... of ... . 3. Yesterday was ... , the ... of ... . 5. Three days ago was ... the ... . 6. Our next class in English is on ... , on the ... of ... .

### *II. Use the right words and word combinations:*

morning exercises; got up; washed; walked; a quarter to 10; breakfast; left; it took me; got on; had dinner; arrived; was busy; came; went; watched TV; went to bed; a short rest; sat down; to read; turned off; at the weekend.

It was Monday yesterday. I ... at about seven o'clock. Then I did my ... , ... and had ... . At 8.30 I ... the house and ... to the station. ... fifteen minutes to get there. I ... the 9 o'clock train and ... in the city at ... , and ... to my office. At the office I ... till 6 p.m. When I ... home I ... and then I had ... . In the evening I like ... a little, but yesterday I ... into my favourite armchair and ... . Then I rang up my friend Harry and told him that I wanted to see him ... . Harry agreed. Then I ... the light and ... .

### *III. Use the right prepositions or adverbs:*

Every morning regularly, ... ten o'clock, when her lecture was ... , Jean came ... the room, where I was already ... work.

Her careful\*, accurate work was of great help ... me. She prepared hundreds ... slides which it was necessary to examine. She was very careful and never made a mistake. Her presence stimulated me greatly.

\* careful — *аккуратный*

— Oh, yes, I had a very nice day, thank you. And what about you?

— I didn't. I stayed at home and worked hard.

— It's a pity.

3. — Hello, Pat. You didn't phone me yesterday.

— No, I didn't. I was very tired last night.

— Why?

— I had such a busy day.

— Did you? What did you do?

— I woke up at 6 and went to the station to meet my mother-in-law.

— Why didn't your husband do that?

— He went to Paris on business.

— I see.

— Then we had breakfast. I left her at home and went to my office. I was 15 minutes late because I was in a hurry and a policeman stopped me. So it took me an hour to get to my work.

— Oh, my! I hope you didn't have much work at the office.

— Yes, I did. We had a long meeting in the morning, then I had a lot of visitors, and at the end of the working day I wrote some business letters.

— Did your daughter cook dinner for you?

— No, she didn't. She was busy at the University and came home very late.

— Poor thing! I hope you are not so busy tomorrow.

### Exercises

#### *I. Finish the following:*

- A. 1. There are seven days in a ... . 2. The first day of the week is ... . 3. The second day is ... . 4. After Tuesday comes ... . 5. ... is the fourth day of the week. 6. The last day on which we work is ... . 7. We don't go to work on ... and on ... . 8. They are

... one o'clock we had lunch ... the laboratory.

... the seventh day, as we worked silently, I heard a step and turned ... Professor Challis stood ... the doorway.

"I thought I'd look in, Robert, to see how you were getting on."

I rose at once and introduced him ... Jean. He bowed\* ... her in his old-fashioned manner. I understood that he liked her.

... that he came regularly to visit us, often ... the lunch hour. He sat ... a chair watching us with his bright eyes. He often told us ... his life as a young student ... Paris, ... the Sorbonne, where he worked under the great Duclaux.

(From "Shannon's Way" by A. Cronin)

#### IV. Read aloud and remember:

to be — was, were — been  
 to begin — began — begun  
 to come — came — come  
 to do — did — done  
 to get — got — got  
 to give — gave — given  
 to go — went — gone  
 to have — had — had  
 to know — knew — known  
 to leave — left — left  
 to lie — lay — lain  
 to make — made — made  
 to meet — met — met  
 to read — read — read  
 to ring — rang — rung  
 to run — ran — run  
 to say — said — said

\* to bow [bau] — кланяться



to see — saw — seen  
to sing — sang — sung  
to sit — sat — sat  
to spend — spent — spent  
to take — took — taken  
to think — thought — thought  
to understand — understood — understood  
to wake — woke — woken  
to write — wrote — written

*V. Answer the questions:*

1. What time do you get up? 2. Do you get up so early on Sundays? 3. Do do you your morning exercises every day? 4. Where do you have your breakfast? 5. What time do you leave home? 6. What time do you come to your office? 7. How long does it take you to get there? 8. How many hours do you stay at the office? 9. What time does your work begin? 10. Are you sometimes late for work? 11. Do you always come on time? 12. Did you come to your office on time yesterday? 13. What time is your lunch hour? How long does it last? 14. What time is your working day over? 15. Where do you usually go after work? 16. Where did you go after work yesterday? 17. What is your day off? 18. How many days a week do you work? 19. Where do you usually spend the weekend? 20. How did you spend your last weekend?

*VI. Use the verbs in the Past Indefinite Tense:*

A. 1. She works at an office. 2. She usually walks to the University. 3. I like my work. 4. My brother finishes school this year. 5. We want to buy a new house. 6. Every morning I look into the mirror, wash, shave and comb my hair. 7. Every day at 9 o'clock I open the door of my shop. 8. She shows her family album to her new friends.

**B.** 1. He gets up at six every morning, goes out, runs around the house three times for exercise, comes back, makes himself breakfast and has it. 2. His wife gets up at 8 o'clock, does her hair, has a cup of coffee, and takes the dog for a walk in the park.

*VII. Make these statements negative. Use the model:*

**Model:** I worked on Saturday. — I didn't work on Saturday.

1. I got up very early. 2. I made breakfast. 3. I left the house at seven. 4. I came on time. 5. I saw her in the office. 6. Jane married Sam. 7. I passed my exam in English. 8. She showed me her new flat. 9. I did morning exercises today. 10. I liked my new boss.

*VIII. Make up questions and give short answers. Use the model:*

**Model:** He came home at 6. — Did he come home at 6?

— Yes, he did.

— No, he didn't.

1. I visited my friends in Scotland. 2. I learned French at school. 3. He got a new job. 4. We moved to a new flat last month. 5. She needed money. 6. We liked his new car. 7. Their working day began at 9. 8. They sang their favourite songs. 9. The conference finished at 5. 10. He went to his club at night.

*IX. Complete the questions:*

1. ... did the alarm clock ring? 2. ... did you go after classes yesterday? 3. ... did he do when he came home from work? 4. ... did it take you to get here? 5. ... did we go to the cinema last? 6. ... did you spend your weekend? 7. ... did you have your lunch today? 8. ... didn't she come on time? 9. ... met you at the station? 10. ... woke you up in the morning?

*X. Complete the following sentences using the Past Indefinite:*

**Model:** Now he lives in Moscow but a few years ago he lived in Kiev.

1. Now he studies English but at school ... . 2. Now he often sleeps in the daytime but he never ... before. 3. Now she knows something about the life of these people but before she came to live here she ... . 4. Now I like classical music but when I was eighteen ... . 5. I am a student now but last year ... . 6. He leaves home at 8 in the morning but when he lived in the country ... . 7. He doesn't smoke now but only a few months ago ... . 8. She seldom writes to me now but there was a time when she ... . 9. This year we go to the cinema at weekends but last year ... . 10. We usually watch TV in the evening but last night ... .

*XI. Use the verbs in the Past Indefinite Tense:*

I (to get up) very late yesterday. I (to look) out of the window and (to see) that the weather (to be) bad. So I (to think) for some time and (to decide) that I (to have) time to myself. Suddenly the telephone (to ring). I (to come) up to the telephone and (to take) the receiver. My Friend Nick (to call). He (to say) that it (to be) his day off and (to invite) me to his place. I (to spend) the whole day there. First we (to talk) about our problems; then we (to watch) TV, there (to be) an interesting American film which we (to like), then we (to have) tea in the kitchen and (to talk) again. We (to listen) to some music and when I (to look) at the watch I (to see) that it (to be) 8 in the evening. I (to think) I must be off and (to say) goodbye to Nick. When I (to come) home my parents (to ask) me, "You (to have) a good time?" "Yes," I (to answer), "I certainly (to do)." But I (to be) sorry, I (not to write) a single page on that day.

*XII. Read the text and retell it. Begin with: "Yesterday..."*

I usually get up at seven o'clock. I open the window, make my bed and do my morning exercises. Then I wash and dress. In half an hour I'm ready for breakfast, my mother makes it for me. After breakfast I put on my hat and coat, take my bag and go to school. Classes begin at eight. As I live near my school I

always walk there. We usually have six lessons every day. At 2 o'clock in the afternoon the school is over. I come home, have dinner, wash up and have a short rest. At 5 o'clock I sit down to do my homework. It usually takes me three hours to do my homework. Sometimes I go to the cinema or visit my friends in the evening. At 8 o'clock I have supper. After supper our family get together in the living room where we talk, read newspapers and books and watch TV. At eleven o'clock I go to bed.

*XIII. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Retell the stories:*

A. Many yeas ago two friends (to go) to a very small town. Their names (to be) Joe and Tom.

It (to be) dark when they (to come) to a little inn\*. They (to ask) for a room with two beds. The owner of the inn (to show) them a room and (to give) them a candle\*\* because there (to be) no lamp in that room.

When they (to come) to the room Joe (to drop)\*\*\* the candle. It (to be) very dark. They (to find) the door of the room and (to go) in. They (to take) their clothes off and (to go) to bed. The bed (to be) very big, and by mistake they (to go) into the same bed. Tom on one side, and Joe — on the other.

After some time Joe (to say), "You know, Tom, there (to be) a man in my bed. Here (to be) his feet near my head."

"Yes, Joe, there (to be) a man in my bed, too."

"Let us push them off our beds."

They (to begin) to push each other and soon two heavy bodies (to fall) on the floor.

"Joe," (to cry) Tom, "my man (to be) stronger than I. He (to push) me down to the floor."

\* an inn — маленькая гостиница

\*\* a candle — свеча

\*\*\* to drop — уронить

"I (to be) on the floor, too," (to answer) Joe. "I (to think) we must go and tell the owner of the inn about it."

(After Jerome K. Jerome)

B. Every time a circus (to come) to our town, I and my friend Joey (to think) of nothing else but the circus and we (to be) no good at all at school.

The circus (to be) everything to us. When we (to hear) that the circus was coming, we (to run) all around the town in excitement. And when the circus (to be) at last in town we (to like) nothing better than to watch the workers, we (to carry) water for the elephant, we (to show) the smaller boys about the place. It (to be) great fun.

This time the whole trouble (to start) when Joey (to run) into the classroom one day, ten minutes late, and without taking off his hat and explaining, why he (to be) late, (to cry), "Hey, Aram, why (to be) you here? The circus (to be) in town!"

I (to feel) so happy when I (to hear) the news, that I (to jump) up at once and (to run) out of the room. The teacher (to shout) to me, "Aram, stay in this room. You (to hear) me, Aram?"

I (to hear) her very well but I (not to care\*). The minute the circus (to arrive) in town we (to be) out of school.

(After "The Circus" by W. Saroyan)

#### XIV. Translate into English:

1. — Когда вы обычно встаете? — По рабочим дням в 7 часов, а в субботу и воскресенье немного позже обычного. — Как вы добираетесь на работу? — Обычно я иду пешком, а сегодня я ехала на автобусе. 3. Вчера у меня был тяжелый день. Я очень устал и лег спать рано. Я на-

\* to care — заботиться (I don't care — мне все равно)

чал читать книгу, но через минуту заснул. 4. В субботу у нас была вечеринка. Мы потратили много денег, но не жалеем. Мы очень хорошо провели время. 5. Мама встала в 7 часов, приготовила завтрак, разбудила детей и папу. Ее рабочий день начался. 6. В понедельник мой будильник не прозвонил. Я проснулся в 8.30 и вскочил с постели. Я не делал зарядку и пошел на работу без завтрака. 7. Поторопитесь, поезд прибывает через 3 минуты. 8. Вы поняли, что он сказал? 9. Мы знали, что опаздываем, но автобуса не было. 10. В прошлом году здесь было мало посетителей? 11. Не торопитесь. У нас масса времени. Занятие начинается через 20 минут. 12. Вчера у меня был выходной. Я немного поработал в саду, читал, смотрел телевизор. Вечером меня навестили родственники. 13. Мы написали им два письма на прошлой неделе. 14. — Господин Уэст, что вы делали вчера с 5 до 7? — Мой рабочий день закончился в 5. В 5.10 я вышел из офиса и пошел к автобусной остановке. — Вас кто-нибудь видел? — Нет, на улице никого не было. — Вы долго ждали автобус? — Нет, я подождал немного, и автобус подошел. — Сколько времени у вас обычно уходит, чтобы доехать домой? — Обычно около 45 минут. Я вышел из автобуса и пошел домой. Ровно в шесть я был дома. — Вы смотрели на часы? — Нет, но я знаю, что всегда прихожу домой в это время.

*XV. Read the story and answer the questions:*

**All's Well That Ends Well**

It was about midnight when the letter arrived\*. It dropped through the letterbox at John's feet. John was about (собирался) to lock\*\* the door for the night. He opened the door and

\* to arrive — *прибывать, приходиться*

\*\* to lock — *запирать*

\*\*\* "In ten minutes you will be dead." — «Через 10 минут ты умрешь».

looked outside; there was nobody anywhere about. He closed the door slowly and looked at the letter. Yes, the letter was for him. He opened it. Inside there was a single sheet of paper, and on it were the words, "In ten minutes you will be dead\*\*\*." John hurried to the telephone, lifted the receiver and dialed 999. There was no answer. He tried again, then he realized the phone didn't work. Was there any connection between the useless phone and the letter?

He decided to go to the call box down the road. John opened the door and listened for a few seconds. All was quiet. He looked once more at the letter. At that moment the doorbell rang and somebody touched him on the shoulder...

"John, John!" someone said, "It's time to get up." John turned over in bed and saw his wife looking at him. "That's the last time I eat much before I go to bed," he said.

◆ **Questions:**

1. When did the letter arrive?
2. What did John do?
3. What did the letter say?
4. Did the phone work?
5. Where did he decide to go?
6. Was there anybody outside?
7. Whom did John see at his bed?
8. Why is the story called "All Is Well That Ends Well"?

*XVI. Listen to the text:*

**Another Day in the Life of the Queen**

Queen Elizabeth II wakes up at 7 o'clock, has a cup of tea and reads *The Times*. Then she has a bath and gets dressed. At 8 o'clock she listens to BBC news and has breakfast with Prince Philip. After breakfast she rings up the Queen Mother. Then she reads personal letters and has an important business consultation with Private Secretary and then works at govern-



- R. Now, Duchess, tell us about an ordinary day in your life.
- D. Well, I wake up at 7 o'clock.
- R. Really? Do you get up then?
- D. No, of course, I don't get up at that time. I have breakfast in bed and I read *The Times*.
- R. When do you get up?
- D. I get up at ten.
- R. What do you do then?
- D. I read my letters and dictate the replies to my secretary.
- R. ... and then?
- D. At eleven I walk in the garden with Philip.
- R. Oh! Who's Philip?
- D. Philip is my dog.
- R. What time do you have lunch?
- D. I have lunch at twelve thirty.
- R. And after lunch?
- D. Oh, I rest until six o'clock.
- R. ... and at six? What do you do at six?
- D. I dress for dinner. We have dinner at eight o'clock.
- R. What time do you go to bed?
- D. Well, I have a bath at 9.30 and I go to bed at ten.
- R. Thank you Duchess... you have a busy and interesting life!



ment documents. At 1 o'clock she has a quick lunch in her private apartment in Buckingham Palace and at 2 o'clock leaves the Palace to open a new hospital. There she makes speeches, shakes hands and has a cup of tea. At 4.45 she is back at the Palace and works in her office. At 5.30 she receives foreign visitors and then has the final meeting with her Private Secretary. In the evening she goes to St. James' Palace where she has a reception party\* and talks with 70 people. Then goes back to the Palace and at 8.30 has dinner with Philip and a group of some businessmen. At 10 she watches television news and then reads some official papers and telephones some members of the Royal Family\*\* — just to see if all is well. At about 11 she goes to bed.

*Listen to the text again and answer these questions:*

1. How long does the Queen spend with Prince Philip?
2. What kind of people does she meet?
3. What three things does she do every day and what three things did she only do on that day?

*XVII. Things to do:*

1. Speak about your (your wife's, husband's, friend's) working day.
2. Say how you spent your last weekend.
3. Read the interview and interview some famous person (an actor, a singer, etc.)

\* \* \*

Robin Black, a television reporter, is interviewing the Duchess\*\*\* of Wessex for the programme "The English at Home."

\* to have a reception party — *давать прием*

\*\* the Royal Family — *Королевская семья*

\*\*\* Duchess [ˈdʌtʃɪs] — *герцогиня*

## 4. Describe a day of a businessman using the pictures:



*XVIII. Poems and songs to enjoy:*1. **Our Day**

Breakfast in the morning,	Supper in the evening
Dinner in the day,	When the sky is red,
Tea comes after dinner	Then the day is over
Then comes time to play.	And we go to bed.

2. **Solomon Grundy**

Solomon Grundy	Worse on Friday,
Born on Monday,	Died on Saturday,
Christened on Tuesday,	Buried on Sunday.
Married on Wednesday,	That was the end
Fell ill on Thursday,	Of Solomon Grundy.

3.

Thirty days have September,  
April, June and November;  
All the rest have thirty-one  
Excepting February alone,  
And that has twenty-eight days clear  
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

4. **Banker's Wife Blues**

Where does John live?  
He lives near the bank.  
Where does John work?  
He works at the bank.  
When does he work?  
He works all day  
and he works all night  
at the bank, at the bank.  
Where does he study?  
He studies at the bank.  
Where does he sleep?

He sleeps at the bank.

Why does he spend all day, all night  
all day, all night

at the bank, at the bank?

Because he loves his bank

More than his wife

and he loves his money

More than his life.

5. Where d'you come from? — I'd rather not say.  
 What is your name? — I'd rather not say.  
 How tall are you? How old are you?  
 How much do you weigh? — I'd rather not say.  
 How much do you make? — I'd rather not say.  
 Where were you last night? Why were you not at home?  
 Did you come home late? Did you go home alone?  
 Did you have a good time? Did you see a good play?  
 Did you go to a concert? — I'd rather not say..

6.

What time is it? — It's 2 o'clock.

What time is it? — It's 3 o'clock.

What time is it? — It's 4 o'clock

And now it's 5 o'clock.

What time is it? — It's five past 9.

What time is it? — It's ten past 9.

What time is it? — It's half past 9

And now it's half past 10.

What time is it? — It's twenty to one.

What time is it? — It's quarter to one.

What time is it? — It's ten to one

And now it's five to one.

7.

January, February, March,

April, May, June, July.

January, February, March,

April, May, June, July.

August, September, October,

November, December.  
August, September, October,  
November, December.

8.

### This Is the Way We...

This is the way we wash our hands,  
We wash our hands, we wash our hands.

This is the way we wash our hands,  
We wash our hands in the morning.

This is the way we clean our teeth,  
We clean our teeth, we clean our teeth,

This is the way we clean our teeth,  
We clean our teeth in the morning.

This is the way we cut our bread,  
We cut our bread, we cut our bread,

This is the way we cut our bread,  
We cut our bread in the morning.

This is the way we drink our milk,  
We drink our milk, we drink our milk,

This is the way we drink our milk,  
We drink our milk in the morning.

This is the way we brush our shoes,  
We brush our shoes, we brush our shoes,

This is the way we brush our shoes,  
We brush our shoes in the morning.

This is the way we go to school,  
We go to school, we go to school,

This is the way we go to school,  
We go to school in the morning.

- VI. 1. Shut up, Shirley.  
 2. Ashley is a shy fish.  
 3. Wishes don't wash dishes.
4. Measure for measure.  
 5. Eat at pleasure,  
 drink with measure.
- VII. 1. What kind of noise annoys an oyster?  
 A noisy noise annoys an oyster.  
 2. Short sails should sail surer seawards.  
 3. She sells sea shells on the seashore,  
 The shells that she sells on the seashore,  
 Are sea shells, I'm sure.
- VIII. The shoemaker's shop is shut today,  
 Oh, what shall I do with my shoes?  
 The shoemaker's shop is shut, I say  
 And there are big holes in my shoes.  
 The holes in my shoes may stop my play,  
 Oh, what shall I do with my shoes?
- IX. What is pleasure?  
 Children? Treasure?  
 Work or leisure?  
 All to measure.  
 Buy a television  
 And be sure on this occasion  
 You'll get your pleasure without measure.

### Vocabulary

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| guide [гайд] — гид                   | famous — знаменитый, известный                       |
| guide book — путеводитель            | to keep to the left —                                |
| tourist [туэрист] — турист           | держаться левой стороны                              |
| foreign tourist — иностранный турист | to book tickets in advance — заказать билеты заранее |
| stranger — незнакомец, чужой         | to change for — пересесть на                         |
| trip — поездка                       | Travel Agency — бюро путешествий                     |
| to make a trip — совершать поездку   | to spend holidays — проводить отпуск                 |

## UNIT VI

### TOURISTS IN LONDON

**Grammar:** The Future Indefinite Tense.  
Способы выражения отнесенности  
к будущему.  
Оборот *to be going + Infinitive*.

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I.	[ɔɪ]	II. [əʊ]	III. [ʃ]	IV. [ʒ]
	boy	no	she	usual
	toy	go	sleep	pleasure
	joy	phone	shelf	measure
	join	know	shy	treasure
	voice	slow	shine	leisure
	point	boat	shame	vision
	poison	coat	wash	garage
	avoid	goat	Russia	

- V.
1. Boys will be boys.
  2. Join me in the voyage.
  3. What's the boiling point of oil?
  4. Oh, no!
  5. No go.
  6. No smoking!
  7. Nobody knows.

to show smb. around (the city) — показать кому-л. (город)  
 to travel by (air, sea) — ездить (на самолете, по морю)  
 rich — богатый  
 expensive — дорогой  
 wonderful — прекрасный  
 railway — железная дорога  
 railway station — железнодорожный вокзал  
 traffic — уличное движение  
 heavy traffic — сильное движение  
 traffic lights — светофор  
 traffic rules — правила уличного движения  
 passenger — пассажир  
 crossing — переход  
 to cross the street — переходить улицу

to enjoy smth. — наслаждаться  
 to enjoy smth. — наслаждаться чем-л.  
 to swim — плавать  
 to go boating — кататься на лодке  
 to lie in the sun — загорать  
 beach — пляж  
 sunshine — солнце  
 coast — побережье  
 to take pictures — фотографировать  
 view (of London) — вид (Лондона)  
 the customs office — таможня  
 sign [sain] — вывеска; знак  
 seashore — морской берег  
 to ask the way to — спрашивать, как пройти куда-л.  
 to be overcrowded — быть переполненным  
 to tell smb. — сказать кому-л.

## Texts

### I.

### TOURISTS IN LONDON

Hello! Welcome in London, the capital of Great Britain! My name is Jane. I'm going to be your guide and I'll show you around the centre of London. We'll walk a lot and I'll tell you something about the history of London. But as you are all foreign tourists, before we do this, I'll tell you a few words about our traffic rules.

There is a lot of traffic in the streets of London. Most of London buses are the famous red double-deckers\*, that have two platforms for passengers. There are also green one-storey

\* double-decker — двухэтажный автобус



buses, they run from London to the countryside. Brown buses belong to British railways.

Be careful when you cross the street in London, because in Britain the traffic keeps to the left, and not to the right as in European countries. When you want to cross the street, look first to the right and then to the left.

The traffic lights here are not like in Europe. The red light says "Stop," the green light says "Wait" and the yellow light says "Cross." "Keep left" is the general rule in Great Britain. People cross the street at the black-and-white crossing, but if they are in a hurry they just run across at any place. Sometimes a policeman stops them. They call him "Bobby." He stands at street corners regulating the traffic.



## II. PLANS FOR THE SUMMER HOLIDAYS

Michael and his wife Helen talk about their plans for the coming holiday.

*Michael:* What about spending our holiday in California this time? I've always wanted to go to California.

*Helen:* In California? Why not in Hawaii?

*Michael:* Do you think we are so rich?

*Helen:* I think we can afford it\* if we do not stay at a very expensive hotel.

\* we can afford it — мы можем себе это позволить

*Michael:* Well, I don't think so! Why not go to the West Coast? California... a land of sunshine and golden beaches...

*Helen:* OK, I'll go to the Travel Agency next week. You know what we shall do? We'll book plane tickets in advance.

*Michael:* That's a good idea! By the way, I've got a guide book of California. Let's read what it says about this wonderful land.

*Helen:* Oh, what a beautiful view! The sea... I love the sea! We'll swim, we'll lie in the sun and go boating...

*Michael:* Yes, we'll take a boat trip along the coast and take pictures.

*Helen:* And when we come back we'll make an album of our wonderful holiday in California!

*Michael:* OK, I'll take my new camera then. I think, we'll enjoy our holiday there.

rush hour — час пик

to take pictures — фотографировать

by the way — между прочим

Go straight to... — Идите прямо до...

How do you get to...? — Как добраться до...?

Will you tell me how to get to...? — Скажите, как добраться до...?

I'm lost. — Я заблудился.

You're going the wrong way. — Вы едете (идете) не в ту сторону.

Can I check in here for the flight to New York? — Можно мне зарегистрироваться здесь на рейс на Нью-Йорк?

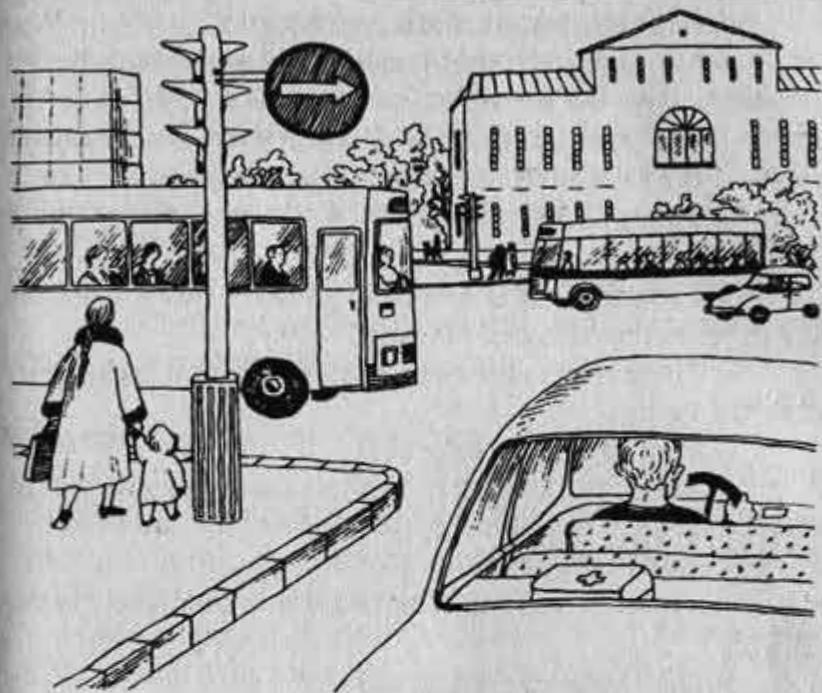
### ☺☹ Dialogues

1. — Excuse me, do you know where the nearest bank is, please?

— Go straight down to the traffic lights, then turn left and it's the second street on your right.

— Thank you. And is there a post office near here?

— Yes, on the other side of the square.



2. — Excuse me, how do I get to Baker Street from here?  
 — Take bus 24 at the bus station.  
 — Is the bus station far?  
 — No, only about a quarter of a mile. Turn right at the traffic lights.  
 — Thank you.  
 — You are welcome.
3. — Excuse me, where's the nearest metro station?  
 — It's about 200 metres down the road.  
 — And how do I get to Trafalgar Square?  
 — I'm sorry. I don't know, I'm a stranger here, too. Ask the policeman.  
 — Thank you, anyway.

4. — Does this bus go to the centre?  
— No, it doesn't. You'll have to change for No. 20. It'll take you right to the centre.  
— Where is the bus stop?  
— It's right in front of you, across the street.  
— Thanks a lot.
5. — Excuse me sir, I'm a stranger here. Will you tell me how to get to the centre of Moscow?  
— There is an express bus that will take you to the nearest metro station.  
— How long will it take me?  
— About half an hour or so. And it will take you another half hour to go by the metro.  
— Can I take a taxi?  
— Certainly you can. The taxi stop is over there, in the square.  
— Oh, thank you very much.  
— You are welcome.
6. — How do you get to your office?  
— Normally I go by the metro.  
— How long does it take you?  
— About half an hour.  
— As for me, I don't like the metro. It is so overcrowded especially during the rush hour when people travel from one end of Moscow to another.  
— What transport do you like?  
— I drive my own car.  
— Oh, I see.
7. — Excuse me.  
— Yes?  
— I'm lost. Is this the way to Brighton?

— No, I'm afraid, it isn't. You are going the wrong way. Oh, dear! Can you tell me the way to Brighton?

— Yes, turn round and go back to the crossroads, then turn right and you will see the sign which says "Brighton."

8. — Hello, where is the customs office?  
 — It's right here.  
 — Can I check in here for the flight to New York?  
 — Certainly, sir. Your ticket and passport, please.  
 — Here they are.

### Exercises

#### *I. Use the right words:*

to cross; summer holidays; to travel; by plane; traffic lights; get; traffic; car; left; around; right; in advance; coast; to the left; to the right; wrong.

1. Where are you going to spend your ... ? 2. I don't like to go ... I prefer ... by train. 3. Let's go boating along the ... 4. It is a very busy street, there is always a lot of ... 5. It is safe ... the road only where the ... are. 6. When crossing the street, first look ... , then ... 7. How do you ... to your office? — I drive my own ... 8. Where's the nearest metro station? — It's ... the corner. 9. In Britain on the road the right side is the ... side and the ... side is the ... side. 10. It's always good to book tickets ...

#### *II. Say what you (your friend, wife, husband, children, etc.) will do in summer. Use the model:*

**Model:** to go/the south — I'll go to the south in summer.

to go by train  
 to take a plane  
 to swim  
 to lie  
 to go boating  
 to travel

in the sun  
 to the Black Sea  
 to the seaside  
 to the sea  
 to the river  
 around Europe

to show (your friend)  
to spend holidays  
to take pictures  
to make a trip

in the south  
round your city  
in Sochi  
to Australia

### III. Use the Future Indefinite Tense:

1. I spend my weekend in the country. 2. Her relatives live in Canada. 3. She knows French. 4. We have a class in English today. 5. Do you spend your free time at home? 6. He is a student of the University. 7. There is a lot of work to do about the house. 8. The traffic is very heavy today. 9. I have an interesting job. 10. Are there many people on Sunday?

### IV. Practise aloud the following and give your own examples:

A. 1. Shall I book tickets in advance? — Yes, I think so. 2. Shall I show you the city? — Yes, please. 3. Shall I go with you? — No, thanks. 4. Shall I show you the way? — Yes, thank you. 5. Shall I give you some more tea? — No, thanks. 6. Shall I read? — Do, please.

B. 1. Will you take some pictures of us? — With pleasure. 2. Will you give me your camera for a moment? — Here you are! 3. Will you come to our housewarming party? — I will, thank you. 4. Will you meet us at the metro station? — Certainly. 5. Will you spend the summer holiday with us? — With great pleasure, thank you. 6. Will you tell me how to get to the centre? — There's an express bus over there.

### V. Use "to be going":

**Model:** My sister called me yesterday./stay with me for a week — My sister is **going** to stay with me for a week,

They look through  
the guide book of London.

visit

I prefer this hotel.	stay (at)
He bought a new car.	travel about the country
I don't know the way.	ask the policeman
Tomorrow I'll go to the Travel Agency.	fly to the Caribbean
I need a big bag.	spend the weekend in the country
They book tickets to Miami.	spend holidays

*VI. Insert suitable auxiliary verbs:*

1. Where ... you usually have lunch? 2. ... you see the film on TV last night? 3. ... she got her own car? 4. ... he always travel by plane? 5. ... you go to the sea coast last summer? 6. What ... you going to do tonight? 7. What ... I do? I think, I'm lost. 8. ... the bus overcrowded? — Yes, it ... 9. ... he going to spend the weekend with us? 10. ... you know English well?

*VII. Use the correct tense form of the verbs:*

My days off (to be) Saturday and Sunday. I never (to know) how (to spend) them. On Friday night when I (to go) to bed I think that I (to get up) very early on Saturday and I (to have) enough time to do a lot of things that I (not to do) during the week. I also (to plan) that on Saturday I (to have) a good rest. But Saturday (to come) and all my plans (to change). I usually set my alarm clock for 8 o'clock. I (to do) so last Saturday too, but I never (to hear) it, I (to think) it (not to work). When I (get up) it (to be) about 11. It (to take) me an hour to cook breakfast. After breakfast I (to decide) to go shopping because I looked into the refrigerator and (to see) that I (to have) no food for the next week. I (to come) back home only in the

evening because Saturday (to be) not the most convenient day for shopping. I (to forget) it. Late in the evening I (to go) washing and cleaning, and (to watch) some TV programmes. I (to go) to bed at 1 o'clock. But before I (to fall) asleep I (to make) plans for Sunday. "I (to have) the whole day to myself tomorrow," I (to think).

*VIII. Use the correct tense form of the verbs in the subordinate clauses of time and condition:*

**Model:** I'll help you when I (to be) free. —  
 I'll help you when I **am** free.  
 He'll do it if you (to ask) him. —  
 He'll do it if you **ask** him.

1. I'll call you as soon as I (to buy) tickets for the train. 2. If the day (to be) hot, we shall go to the beach. 3. If he (to return) home before Friday, he will help us to do the translation. 4. If you (to want) to see all these places, you must stay here for a week. 5. Please, drive us to the airport if you (to have) time tomorrow morning. 6. As soon as you (to come) back from your trip, call on me. 7. They will go for a walk before they (to go) to bed. 8. Speak to him about it when you (to see) him. 9. Will you wait until he (to come) back? 10. Come to see me before you (to leave) for the south.

*IX. Finish the sentences:*

1. We shall cross the street when the green light ... . 2. It will take you only 10 minutes if you ... by the metro. 3. You'll be late if you ... not hurry. 4. We'll have dinner as soon as it ... ready. 5. You'll have a good time if you ... to the sea coast. 6. I'll know something about London after I ... a trip there. 7. He'll send us a letter when he ... . 8. They'll buy the house if ... . 9. I'll ask a policeman in the street if ... . 10. We'll buy a guide book before ... .



*X. Use the Present Indefinite or the Future Indefinite Tense:*

1. When you (to cross) the street look left and then right. 2. It (to take) you ten minutes if you (to take) a taxi. 3. If you (to turn) the corner you (to see) a five-storey building in front of you. 4. You (to catch) the train if you (to hurry). 5. Let's wait till the green light (to be) on. 6. When you (to get off) the bus I (to be) there. 7. Show this card to the policeman if you (to get) lost. 8. We (to walk) if there (to be) no bus. 9. Before you (to leave) for Sochi ring me up. 10. If you (to come) at five o'clock we (to see) an interesting programme on TV. 11. As soon as you (to get) my letter, send me some money. 12. When I (to get) the money I (to buy) a new car. 13. If you (to be) busy on Sunday afternoon I (to invite) your friend. 14. If you (to look through) today's paper you (to see) your picture there.

*XI. Say what you will do:*

1. When I have my house I'll ... . 2. When I arrive in London I'll ... . 3. As soon as I get to Japan ... . 4. If I know English very well ... . 5. If I go to Hollywood ... . 6. When I marry you ... . 7. When I am free ... . 8. When I am ninety ... . 9. If I am a millionaire ... . 10. Before I go to New York ... .

*XII. Use prepositions or adverbs:*

A. Once upon a time there lived mice ... the house. Their life was very happy because there was always a lot ... food ... the house. But one day there appeared a fat cat ... the same house. That was the end ... their happy life. The mice decided to do something about it and held a conference\*. They discussed the problem ... a long time but didn't come to any agreement\*\*. ... last a young beautiful mouse stood ... and said, "I know what we shall do, we shall hang a bell around the cat's neck. All the mice liked the plan very much and were very happy, they

\* to hold (held) a conference — *проводить собрание, конференцию*

\*\* to come to an agreement — *прийти к соглашению*

laughed and praised the young mouse. Suddenly an old wise mouse rose and asked, "And who will hang the bell ... the cat's neck?" Silence was the only answer.

**B.** I was born ... a small town ... the north ... England. There is a big castle (замок) ... the centre ... the town and a few fine churches (церкви). Here most ... the streets are dark and narrow; the houses are ... both sides ... the streets and they are not much different ... each other. ... the suburbs (в пригороде) the houses are bigger and newer, ... all modern conveniences, and the streets are wider. There are three cinemas ... the town. One ... them is not far ... our house. I go there once a week; but when the film is good we all go ... the cinema together. The town itself is a quiet place now, ... very few people ... the streets during the day and very small traffic. But there was a time a few hundred years ago when the town was quite famous. It has really a long and interesting history. The countryside ... it is very beautiful. There is a river nearby where you can bathe, or fish. There are two bridges ... the river. ... the other side ... the river there are some low, green hills.

### *XIII. Translate into English:*

1. Лондон — столица Великобритании. 2. В центре Лондона всегда много туристов. 3. В Лондоне левостороннее движение. Когда будете переходить улицу, сначала посмотрите направо, затем налево. 4. — Извините, как проехать до ближайшего метро? — Автобусная остановка на той стороне улицы. 5. Если мы возьмем такси, то будем дома через полчаса. 6. — Этот автобус идет в центр? — Да. 7. Днем на этой улице очень сильное движение, а ночью транспорта почти нет. 8. Где вы собираетесь проводить летний отпуск? 9. Завтра мы собираемся навестить своих друзей. 10. Позвони мне, пожалуйста, как только приедешь. 11. Он поедет в Англию, как только выучит английский. 12. Что вы делаете сегодня вечером? 13. Ку-

да мне идти, когда перейду улицу? 14. — Заказать билеты заранее? — Да, пожалуйста. 15. — Ты мне покажешь свой город? — Конечно. 16. Мы устроим новоселье, когда переедем на новую квартиру. 17. Вы потратите не много денег, если не будете жить в дорогом отеле. 18. Он не любит летать самолетом, он говорит, что самый лучший вид транспорта — это поезд. 19. Автобус был так переполнен, что мы решили не входить, а пошли пешком. 20. «Поездка займет у вас всего два часа, затем у вас будет полчаса свободного времени до обеда», — сказал гид. 21. Суббота — неудобный день для поездок в городском транспорте. Везде очень много народу. 22. Когда у меня будет свой автомобиль, я отправлюсь в путешествие по Европе.

*XIV. Read the story and ask questions about it. Render it.*

### A Forgetful Tourist

An English tourist came to Paris. It was his first visit there. On the same day he sent a telegram to his wife who was in London. In the telegram he told her the address of the hotel where he was going to stay. He also told her that he was quite well.

As he was in Paris for the first time, he wanted to see the places of interest. After dinner he went for a walk and then decided to go to the theatre to see a new play. It was very late when the play was over. It was time to go home.

But at that moment he realized\* that he didn't know how to get to the hotel: he didn't remember either the name of the hotel or the address. The Englishman was at a loss\*\*, he didn't know what to do. Suddenly he remembered sending that morning a telegram to his wife. So, late at night his wife got a very strange telegram, "Please, send me my address at once."

\* to realize [пə'laɪz] — *понять, осознать*

\*\* to be at a loss — *растеряться*

XV. Read the story and answer the questions given after it:

### And the Best of Luck!

The day after tomorrow I'll be in Cannes. I'm going to spend my summer holidays there and for a fortnight\* I'll be able to forget about work. I'm going to travel by train and boat. The train leaves Victoria Station at 8 o'clock, so I'll have to get up early.

I'm not going to Cannes because it's sunny or because I like the seaside, but because I want to visit the casino. I expect I'll win\*\* enough to buy my parents a present since I'm usually lucky. When I say lucky, I mean lucky at cards.

I expect to arrive in Cannes at 9 o'clock in the evening and if nothing unexpected happens to change my plans, I'm going to go straight to my hotel, change my clothes and take a taxi to the casino.

#### ◆ Questions:

1. Where will he be the day after tomorrow?
2. How long is he going to stay in Cannes?
3. How is he going to get there?
4. Why will he have to get up early?
5. Why is he going to Cannes?
6. Does he expect to win much money?
7. Is he usually lucky?
8. What time does he expect to arrive in Cannes?
9. What is he to do if he wins?
10. What is he going to do when he arrives in Cannes?

XVI. Listen to the following:

A. "Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen. I'm Captain Nelson. Welcome aboard our plane, flight 200 to New York. We are now flying over the Atlantic Ocean at a height of 30,000

\* a fortnight ['fɔ:tnaɪt] — две недели

\*\* to win (won) — выиграть, победить

feet, at about 600 miles an hour. It will take us about hour to get to New York. The temperature in New York is minus 5 degrees. In a few minutes you will see the coast of America and in half an hour our plane will land in the Kennedy Airport near New York. I hope you are quite comfortable and enjoy the flight with us. Have a good time in New York! Thank you."

*Listen to what the Captain said again and make announcement in the plane (as if you were the Captain or a stewardess).*

### B. The Smuggler\*

Tom Hopkins was a customs officer. He worked in a small town. It wasn't a busy town and there wasn't much traffic. The road was usually very quiet and there were not many travellers. Once a week he met an old man. His name was Miller. He always arrived early in the morning in a big truck\*\*. Tom always looked into the truck but he never found anything. One day he asked Miller about his job. Miller smiled and said, "I'm a smuggler." Last year Tom retired\*\*\*. He flew to Bermuda to spend an expensive holiday. He stayed at a very rich hotel. One day he saw Miller at the hotel bar. Tom walked over to him. "Hello, there!" — "Hi!" — "Do you remember me?" — "Yes, of course I do. You are a customs officer." — "I'm not any more. I retired last month. I want to ask you something. Were you really a smuggler?" — "Of course, I was." — "But I always looked into your truck, and there was nothing. What did you smuggle?" — "Trucks."

*Listen to the story again and say if the following statements are true.*

Begin with: 1) Yes, it's true... You are right...

\* smuggler — контрабандист

\*\* truck — грузовой автомобиль, грузовик

\*\*\* to retire [п'таю] — уйти на пенсию; отойти от дел

2) No, it's wrong... You're mistaken...  
Nothing of the kind...

1. Tom Hopkins was a policeman.
2. The traffic was very heavy in the town where Tom worked.
3. Once a week Tom met Miller.
4. Miller always arrived in a fashionable car.
5. Tom never looked into Miller's truck.
6. Miller said, "I'm a smuggler."
7. When Tom retired he flew to California.
8. He bought a very expensive house in California.
9. One day Tom met Miller in the hotel bar.
10. Miller said that he did not remember Tom.
11. Tom did not ask Miller any questions.
12. Miller was a clever man.

*XVII. Read and reproduce the jokes:*

1. *Teacher:* Tom, why are you late for school every morning?  
*Tom:* Every time I come to the corner, the sign says, "School — Go Slow!"
2. *Bobbie:* How old are you, Kate?  
*Kate:* I am five, and Mother says if I am good and eat everything she gives me I shall be six next birthday.
3. *Mother:* You are five today. Happy birthday to you!  
*Tommy:* Thank you, Mama.  
*Mother:* Would you like to have a cake with five candles on it for your birthday party?  
*Tommy:* I think I'd better have five cakes and one candle, Mama.

*XVIII. Things to do:*

1. Speak about your plans for the coming holidays.
2. A foreign tourist asks you how to get to Red Square (the Bolshoi Theatre, Arbat, etc.). Tell him how to get there if you are in Tverskaya Street.

3. Explain how to get to Red Square from where you are.
4. Ask each other what you are going to do tonight (tomorrow, next week, next month, next year, etc.).
5. Act as a guide showing tourists around. Begin with, "We are in... . On your right (left) you see... . In front of you there is (are)... . Across the street (square)... . Let's walk along the street and... . Now we shall go by the metro as far as... ."

### *XIX. Poems and songs to enjoy:*

#### 1. **The Timetable of Lazy-Bones Grundy**

*By R.L. Stevenson*

Lazy-bones Grundy  
 Must do sums on Monday,  
 "And today it is Tuesday."  
 Says lazy-bones Grundy.  
 "So I'll do it on Wednesday,  
 If not — then on Thursday,  
 Or even on Friday,"  
 Says lazy-bones Grundy.  
 Now very soon comes Friday  
 And Saturday comes,  
 But lazy-bones Grundy  
 Has no time for sums.  
 "Never mind," says Grundy,  
 "I'll do it on Sunday!"

#### 2. **Father Is Going to Read a Book**

Father is going to read a book,  
 So he won't play with me.  
 Mother is busy with her cookbook,  
 So she won't play with me.  
 Dear me! Dear me!  
 No one is going to play with me!  
 Granny is going to read a book,  
 So she won't play with me.

David is busy with his textbook,  
 So he won't play with me.  
 Dear me! Dear me!  
 No one is going to play with me!

3.

### We Shall Overcome

- 1) We shall overcome, we shall overcome,  
 We shall overcome some day.  
 Oh, deep in my heart I do believe,  
 We shall overcome some day.
- 2) We'll walk hand in hand...
- 3) We shall live in peace...
- 4) We are not afraid...

4.

What are you going to do tomorrow?  
 I'm going to clean my room.  
 What are you going to do tonight?  
 I'm going to mend my bike.  
     What's Harry going to do tomorrow?  
     He is going to buy a coat.  
     What is he going to do tonight?  
     He is going to fly his kite.

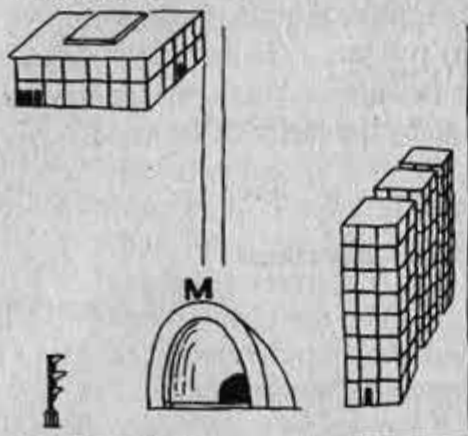
5.

— Pardon me, please tell me, how to get to Greenwich Village.  
 My good friend Sarah Leigh lives at Bank Street Number three.  
 — First turn right at the light. Walk two blocks, Stop at the corner.  
 Then turn left at the Zoo that is Greenwich Avenue, Walk two blocks straight ahead,  
 Pass the school and pass the market, then Turn left at the store. That's the street you're looking for.  
 — Now I know where to go. I'll just follow your directions.  
 Thanks so much. Now, I'm fine.  
 — You're quite welcome any time.

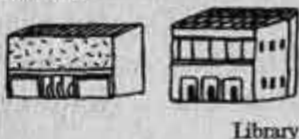


You are staying at the hotel.  
How can you get to different places?

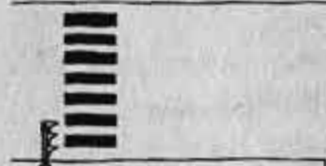
Shopping Centre



Cinema



Library



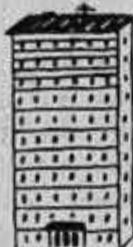
School

Post Office

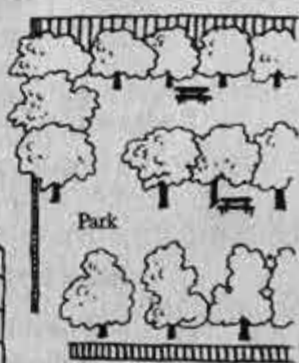


Hotel

Bank



Swimming Pool



Park

Travel Agency



## UNIT VII

### SHOPPING

Grammar: The Continuous Tense Forms.

#### Phonetic Exercises

Say with the teacher:

I. 1. [ŋk]	2. [ŋg]	II. 1. [ŋk] — [ŋ]	2. [ŋg] — [ŋ]
ink	longer	sink — sing	longer — long
sink	stronger	think — thing	stronger — strong
link	angry	wink — wing	angry — hang
wink	hungry	link — cling	hungry — hung
drink	finger	rink — ring	finger — thing
think	language		

III. [ŋ]	IV. [ɪə]	V. [eə]	VI. [ɪə] — [eə]
ring ringing	here	air	ear — air
bring bringing	ear	hair	hear — hair
sing singing	dear	dare	dear — dare
song longing	beer	care	fear — fare
thing hanging	near	fair	mere — mare
	real	pair	sheer — share

- VII. 1. Nothing's wrong.  
2. Bring them along.  
3. Thanks for calling.  
4. Everything's going wrong.

5. There is nothing like listening to birds singing spring songs.

- VIII. 1. Dear, dear! Hear, hear!      5. There! There!  
 2. Near and dear.                      6. I dare swear.  
 3. The idea — my dear!              7. I don't care.  
 4. All's queer here.                    8. Mary wears her hair long.

IX. As I was getting along, along, along  
 And singing a comical song, song, song,  
 The lane that I went  
 Was so long, long, long,  
 And the song that I sang  
 Was so long, long, long  
 And so I went singing a song.

### Vocabulary

to (go) do shopping — ходить по магазинам  
 shop — магазин  
 shop assistant — продавец  
 store — магазин; запас  
 department store — универсам  
 supermarket — универсам  
 to get personal service — обслуживаться персонально  
 to buy — покупать  
 to sell — продавать  
 to pay — платить  
 price — цена  
 at a reasonable price — за разумную цену  
 pound — фунт (= 453,6 г); фунт стерлингов  
 a five-pound note — банкнота в 5 фунтов

to change (money) — менять (деньги)  
 change — сдача  
 tin — банка (железная)  
 bottle — бутылка  
 juice — сок  
 pineapple juice — ананасовый сок  
 the baker's — булочная  
 the dairy — молочный магазин  
 the butcher's — мясной магазин  
 the grocer's — бакалея  
 the greengrocer's — овощной магазин  
 department — отдел  
 shoe department — обувной отдел  
 counter — прилавок  
 ready-made clothes — готовое платье  
 to try smth on — померить что-л.

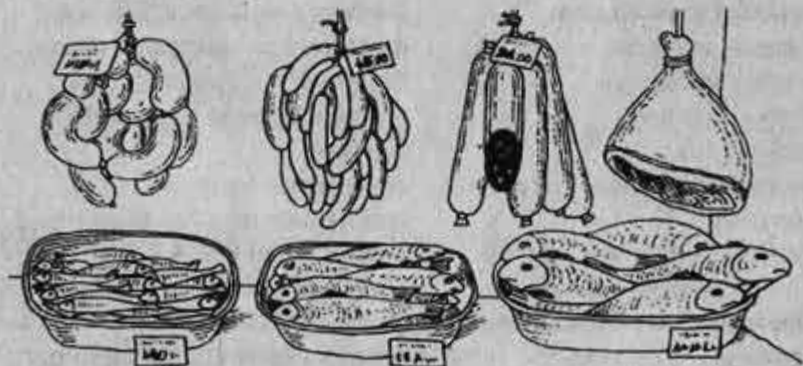
- to fit (well) — подходить, сидеть (хорошо)  
 tight — узкий, тесный  
 loose — свободный, широкий  
 coat — пальто  
 raincoat — плащ  
 frock (dress) — платье  
 gloves — перчатки  
 stockings — чулки  
 cheap — дешевый  
 to wear — носить (об одежде)  
 to be wearing smth. — быть одетым во что-л.  
 size — размер  
 to match — подходить (по цвету)  
 in cash — наличными  
 cash desk — касса
- umbrella — зонт  
 suit — костюм  
 to suit smb. — подходить кому-л.  
 envelope — конверт  
 instant coffee — растворимый кофе  
 meat — мясо  
 vegetables — овощи  
 potatoes — картофель  
 necessary — необходимый  
 skirt — юбка  
 blouse — блузка  
 shirt — рубашка  
 sweater — свитер  
 jacket — жакет; куртка  
 to attract smb's attention — привлечь чье-л. внимание

## Texts

### I.

### SHOPPING

It's Saturday morning. It's Susan's day off. She is waiting for her friend Ann. They are going to do some shopping. They want to go to the nearest shop. Susan doesn't like supermarkets and big stores. In smaller shops you get personal service.



- Shop assistant:* Good morning, Miss Bond!
- Susan:* Good morning, Mr. Davis! This is my friend Ann.
- Shop assistant:* Glad to meet you. Welcome to my shop. I hope you will like it here and be my customer.
- Ann:* I hope so, thank you.
- Shop assistant:* Now, what can I do for you?
- Susan:* A pound of butter, please, a dozen eggs, half a pound of sugar and a small tin of instant coffee.
- Shop assistant:* Anything else?
- Susan:* Yes, I'll have some juice, please. What juice have you got?
- Shop assistant:* We have pineapple juice, orange juice, mango juice and grapefruit juice.
- Susan:* Please, three bottles of pineapple juice, and two bottles of grapefruit juice. How much is that?
- Shop assistant:* Two pounds.

Susan gave the shop assistant a five pound note, got her change and they left the shop. Then Susan and Ann went to the greengrocer's to buy some fruit and vegetables. They bought apples, bananas, tomatoes, and a big bag of potatoes. Then they bought some meat at the butcher's, some bread at the baker's and a bottle of milk at the dairy. Susan goes shopping once a week on Saturday and she likes to have a good store of everything for the next week.

## II.

Next Saturday Susan and Ann decided to go shopping again. First they bought all the necessary foodstuffs, and then Ann said that she wanted to buy new sandals for summer. So they went to the nearest big shopping centre. It is a big depart-

ment store where you can buy practically everything. Susan took Ann around and showed her all the departments. First they went to the shoe department where Ann tried on several pairs of sandals and at last bought her style in white that fitted her perfectly and at a reasonable price. They were under two pounds. The two girls then went to the department of ready-made clothes where they sold dresses, skirts, blouses, shirts, sweaters, jackets and so on. Some beautiful summer frocks attracted Ann's attention, she looked at the counter but didn't buy any; some were too tight, some too loose, none fitted well. Besides, ready-made clothes were very expensive in this shop. The only thing Ann bought for herself was a pair of black stockings.



Is there a department store near here?

How much is that? — *Сколько это стоит?*

Will this do? — *Это вам подойдет?*

They fit me very well. — *Они как раз на меня (подходят мне).*

Many happy returns of the day! — *С днем рождения!*

Happy birthday! — *С днем рождения!*

Do you like it here? — *Вам здесь нравится?*

### ☺☹ Dialogues

1. — What kind of shoes do you want, madam?  
 — I'd like walking shoes with a low heel. High heels are no good for country wear. You see I have rather small feet.  
 — Here is a pair about your size. Try them on. How are they?  
 — They are rather comfortable, but they are a little tight, will you show me another pair a size bigger, please?  
 — Certainly, madam. Will these do?  
 — They fit me very well, thank you.  
 — You are welcome.
  
2. — What would you like to buy, sir?  
 — I'm looking for a navy blue jacket, size 44.  
 — How do you like this jacket?  
 — Well, I like it. How much is it?  
 — Fifty-five pounds ninety-nine pence.  
 — Where must I pay?  
 — At the cash desk over there.
  
3. — Can I help you?  
 — Yes, please. How much is this handbag?  
 — It's six pounds.  
 — And I'd like an umbrella to match.  
 — Here is a good one. It's cheap.  
 — How much is it altogether?

- Eight pounds seventy-four pence. Will you pay in cash or in check?
- In cash.
- Here is your change.
- Thank you.

#### 4. Congratulations

**Ted:** Hello, John. Many happy returns of the day!

**Dan:** Happy birthday, John! We know you are collecting stamps. Here are a few foreign stamps. We think you'll like them.

**John:** Oh, thank you very much. They're wonderful!

#### 5. At a Pet Shop

- Good afternoon, madam. Can I help you?
- Yes. I'm looking for a pet for my son. Can you show me anything?



I want a quiet pet.



— What kind of pet does he like? A cat, a dog, or something exotic?

— Well, he'd like a crocodile, but he's not going to get one.

— We've got a nice big dog.

— Oh, a dog... I think it's very big. Is it expensive?

— Yes, rather. What about a cat? Cats don't eat much, and they are cheap.

— Yes, but they are not friendly.

— Perhaps your son will like a bird? A parrot, perhaps?

The price is reasonable.

— Well, I don't know... Parrots are very noisy.

— Then take a goldfish. It isn't very noisy.

— Oh, yes! That's a good idea! It suits me perfectly.

### Exercises

#### *I. Make up sentences:*

**Model:** If I want to buy a pair of shoes I shall go to the shoe department.

If I want to buy	tea bacon potatoes butter tomatoes fruit juice milk cheese eggs a coat a dress stamps souvenirs	I shall go to	the baker's the grocer's a big store a supermarket a post office the greengrocer's the butcher's the dairy a department store a gift shop
------------------	---	---------------	--

#### *II. Use the following words:*

stores; presents; department (3); shop assistants; gloves; to meet; to buy; glad; invited; counters; shopping.

### The Big Stores

I went into one of the big London ... today and enjoyed myself very much walking from one ... to another looking at various articles on the ... . I thought the ... .. were very helpful. There were hundreds of salesman and dozens of different ... . I went from one ... to another — from umbrella to ... , up and down, in lifts and on escalators. I was surprised ... an old friend of mine whom I hadn't met for years. We talked a little and then did some ... together. I helped her ... some ... for her children. I was so ... to meet her again after twelve years and ... her to come to our place on Sunday.

III. Use the words on the left side with those on the right side:

**Model:** A bottle of juice.

a kilo	of	milk
a packet		sugar
a box		toothpaste
a tube		matches
a tin		bread
a loaf		sardines
a pound		tea
a jar		butter
a bag		honey
a bottle		potatoes

IV. Complete the following:

- Mary usually goes ... on Tuesday and on Saturday.
- She likes to go to the ... because she can buy everything she needs.
- We buy bread at this ... because bread here is always fresh.
- Tomorrow is my friend's birthday, I'm going to the ... to buy a ... for her.
- Where can I ... leather gloves? — At a leather goods ... .
- She bought a very nice dress at the woman's ... department and a pair of red shoes ... .
- Give me a ... of

instant coffee, please. — Here you are. — Thank you. How ... is it? 8. I don't like this ... . It doesn't ... me well. 9. Ann ... on a pair of black shoes but didn't ... them. 10. The raincoat was very ... but I bought it. 11. The blouse is very ... . Will you show me another one that will ... me? 12. I like the skirt very much, but it is too ... . Have you got a bigger ... ?

*V. Give short answers to these questions:*

1. Am I speaking to Ann? 2. Are you buying anything? 3. Is he going shopping now? 4. Is she washing up in the kitchen? 5. Are we going out tonight? 6. Are you going my way? 7. Are they moving to a new house? 8. Was I speaking too long? 9. Were you driving too fast? 10. Was it raining in the morning? 11. Were they looking for something? 12. Shall I be seeing you tomorrow? 13. Will you be wearing your new dress? 14. Will she be waiting for you? 15. Will they be walking this way?

*VI. Use the correct form of "to be":*

1. Where ... you going? — I ... going to the supermarket. 2. I ... thinking about the dress I saw in the shop window yesterday. 3. We ... going to be late. The shop will be closed. 4. ... you going to the baker's? Buy a loaf of bread for me, please. 5. We ... driving too fast and didn't see the traffic lights. 6. He ... choosing an umbrella too long but didn't buy any. 7. While my mother ... paying for the things I bought a bar of chocolate for myself. 8. I hope it ... not ... raining tomorrow. It's our shopping day. 9. He ... celebrating his birthday tomorrow. Let's go and buy him some present. 10. What ... you looking for? — I ... trying to find a Christmas present for my wife.

*VII. Use the Continuous Tense Forms:*

1. Where you (to go)? — I (to go) to the supermarket. I want to buy some food. 2. The Browns (to come) to see us tonight. Go and buy some sweets and a cake. 3. Where is

Ann? — She (to do) the flat. Tomorrow is Nick's birthday. 4. What you (to do) when I rang you up yesterday? — I (to draw) pictures for my little daughter. 5. You (to watch) TV? — No, I am not. — Switch it on at once. They (to show) your dancing group. 6. When I (to walk) in the park yesterday I saw a small dog who (to lie) under a tree and (to look) at me. I decided to take it home. 7. Tomorrow we'll have a party. What dress you (to wear)? — I don't know yet.

*VIII. A. Read the text and a) retell it; b) retell it in the Past, begin with "Yesterday I attended..."*

We are at an English wedding. The bride, the groom, the relatives and the guests are standing outside the house. The bride is wearing a long white dress and is having some blue flowers in her left hand. The groom is wearing a traditional morning suit and is having a top hat in his right hand. They are all smiling, because they are very happy. In a few minutes they are going to get into a Rolls-Royce and drive to a restaurant for celebration.

*B. Read the text and retell it:*

At the restaurant they are going to eat a big cake and drink champagne. Then they will be opening all their presents. Some people will be making speeches and both of the mothers will be crying. The guests will be dancing, telling jokes, singing songs and wishing the bride and the groom happiness. They are going to be happy for ever and ever and have a lot of children.

*IX. Use Continuous or Indefinite Tense Forms:*

1. Father ... morning newspapers. He always ... morning newspapers at breakfast. (to look through) 2. You ... now? — No, I never ... on Saturday. (to go shopping) 3. She ... a letter to our friend when I came. She ... three letters to him last month. (to write) 4. What you ... in the shop when I saw you? —

I ... a sweater. I ... three sweaters, but none fitted. (to try on)  
5. What you ... at the party? — My evening frock, I think, I ...  
not ... it last time. (to wear) 6. What you ... now? I always ...  
news at this time. (to watch) 7. We ... tonight. We sometimes ...  
on Sundays. (to dine out) 8. Where they ... for the vacation? —  
Normally they ... to the South. (to go)

*X. Use the right form of the verbs in brackets (Indefinite or Continuous):*

### Rainy Sunday

It was Sunday. I never (to get up) early Sundays. I sometimes (to stay) in bed until lunchtime. Last Sunday I (to get up) very late. I (to look) out of the window, it (to be) dark outside. "What a day!" I (to think). "It (to rain) again." Just then the telephone (to ring). It (to be) my aunt Lucy. "I (to be) at the station. I (to come) to see you." "But I still (to have) breakfast," I (to say). "What you (to do)?" she (to ask). "I (to have) breakfast," I (to repeat). "Dear me!" she (to say). "You always (to get up) so late? It (to be) one o'clock!"

*XI. Read the stories and answer the questions:*

A. Mr. and Mrs. Smith live near a small village in the southwest of England. Every morning they drive into the village to buy the things they need. There are only two shops in the village. One is a combination of a grocer's and a sweet shop. The other is a general store.

The general store sells meat, fruit, vegetables, groceries, bread, cakes, etc. It is a very old shop and everything is all over the place. There are tins of sardines on top of cornflakes, and salad in the same boxes as the onions, but all the fruit is fresh.

Today Mrs. Smith wants to buy a lot of things. She is choosing everything carefully because they are having a party tonight.

◆ Questions:

1. Where do Mr. and Mrs. Smith live?
2. How many shops are there in the village?
3. What does the general store sell?
4. What is Mrs. Smith doing now?
5. What is she going to buy for the party?

**B. A Man's Best Friend**

Mr. Scott has a bulldog and he thinks that his bulldog is his best friend.

One day Mr. and Mrs. Scott went to buy a present for Mr. Scott's birthday. The dog was with them. They came to town and went to a shoe shop. Mrs. Scott wanted to buy a pair of slippers\* for Mr. Scott as a present.

"These slippers are very nice," said the shop assistant as she was showing them a pair of red slippers with blue pompons. Mrs. Scott did not think they were nice. Then the shop assistant showed a pair of slippers in green and yellow.

"This is a beautiful pair," said Mrs. Scott.

"I don't like it," said Mr. Scott.

"But they are my present to you," said Mrs. Scott.

"No, I don't like them anyway," said Mr. Scott.

"Then I'll buy the red slippers with blue pompons," said Mrs. Scott and asked the shop assistant to give her the slippers. The shop assistant began to look for them everywhere, but she did not find them.

Suddenly Mrs. Scott cried out in horror. She saw their dog who was sitting under the counter eating off the pair of slippers.

◆ Questions:

1. Why does Mr. Scott think that his dog is his best friend?
2. Do you agree with Mr. Scott?

\* slippers — домашние тапочки

3. Can you remember a funny story connected with shopping?

*XII. Use prepositions or adverbs if necessary:*

Mr. Sellyer's bookshop is across the street ... my house. It is situated ... a tall modern building and it is quite famous. It is always full ... people.

I often go ... there to look for new books. He has a lot ... different books ... his shelves. When I go ... Mr. Sellyer's shop I usually stay there ... a few hours.

... that day while I was looking ... the books I was watching Mr. Sellyer at work. I shall describe some ... his methods ... you.

A lady came ... the shop and asked ... a book. Mr. Sellyer showed "Golden Dreams" ... her and said, "The readers are fond ... this book."

Another lady entered ... the shop. She was ... black. Mr. Sellyer also gave her "Golden Dreams." "It's a beautiful book," he said, "... love, very simple but sad\*. My wife cried all the time reading it."

"Have you any good reading ... vacation time?" asked the next customer. Mr. Sellyer recommended "Golden Dreams" once again. "The most humorous book ... the season," he said. "My wife laughed every minute reading it. It's her favourite book now."

It was four o'clock, time to go home. But when I was leaving ... the shop I asked Mr. Sellyer, "Do you like the book yourself?" "I have no time to read every book." "What about your wife?" "I am not married," answered Mr. Sellyer smiling.

*(After Stephen Leacock)*

*XIII. Translate into English:*

1. Я иду за покупками в супермаркет. Тебе купить что-нибудь? 2. Мы обычно покупаем все необходимое в бли-

\* sad — грустный, печальный

жайшем магазине. 3. Сходи, пожалуйста, в овощной магазин, у нас нет овощей. 4. Сколько стоит бутылка ананасового сока? 5. Недавно мы переехали в новый дом. Мне здесь очень нравится. Все магазины рядом. Здесь есть булочная, мясной, молочный магазин, бакалея, а за углом большой универмаг. 6. Где ты купила эти перчатки? Они прекрасно подходят к твоему зонтику и шляпе. 7. — Почему ты покупаешь так много продуктов? — У нас завтра вечеринка по поводу дня рождения мужа. 8. Вчера я ходила в универмаг. Я хотела купить туфли по разумной цене. Там была одна пара, которая привлекла мое внимание, но моего размера не было. 9. Я не буду примерять это пальто. Я не собираюсь его покупать. 10. Салли выглядела как принцесса. Она была в красивом новом голубом платье. 11. Сэм будет ждать вас в аэропорту. На нем будет черный пиджак и серые брюки. В руках у него будет газета. 12. С кем ты так долго разговаривала по телефону? 13. — Что ты ищешь? — Я ишу рождественский подарок для сестры. — Пойдем в магазин подарков, там есть все, что ты хочешь. 14. Он сидел дома и читал газету, когда зазвонил телефон. 15. В воскресенье мы едем за город, вы поедете с нами?



I'll sell milk and buy...

#### XIV. Read and retell the stories:

##### A. High Hopes

One day a young country girl was going to town with a bucket of milk on her head. She said to herself, "When I come to the market, I shall sell the milk at a high price and buy twenty eggs with the money. Out of these eggs I'll get twenty chickens. As soon as the chickens are large enough, I'll sell them and buy a new



dress for myself. It'll be a yellow dress to match my hair. On May Day, if the weather is fine, if it doesn't rain, I'll put on the yellow dress and go to town. Everybody will look at me and say: 'What a beautiful girl!' But I'll pass by without looking at them. I'll only shake\* my head like that." And she shook her head and down came the milk, the eggs, the chickens and the yellow dress.

## B. A Parrot

A man had a speaking parrot. But the parrot could only say one phrase. The phrase was, "There is no doubt about it\*\*." The man got tired of the parrot and decided to sell it. He took the parrot to the market in the cage and shouted, "Who wants my speaking parrot, twenty pounds for my parrot!"

A man who was walking by and heard these words came up to the cage and asked, "Parrot, are you really so clever that you cost twenty pounds?" "There is no doubt about it!" said the parrot.

The man liked the answer so much that he paid for the parrot and brought him home. But time passed and the parrot never said anything else. The man came up to the cage one day and said, "What a fool I was when I bought you once at twenty pounds!" "There is no doubt about it," said the parrot.



\* to shake (shook, shaken) — *трясти, встряхивать*

\*\* There is no doubt [daʊt] about it. — *Несомненно. (Можете не сомневаться в этом.)*

*XV. Listen to the story:*

It was a cold autumn evening and it was raining. Mary was driving home in her Cadillac. It was Saturday and almost all the shops were closed. Suddenly she saw a bright shop window. She did not like window-shopping but she stopped the car and got out. She came up to the shop window and among other things she saw a beautiful chain of pearls\*. They were shining in the bright light of the window. Mary liked the pearls. She entered the shop. It was an expensive shop. There were no people inside. Mary went up to the counter and saw the same chain of pearls there. Soon the shop assistant came out to her.

"Can I help you, madam?" he asked while Mary was looking at the pearls.

"Yes, sir. Can I see that chain of pearls over there?"

"Certainly, madam. Here you are."

"How much is it?"

"Five hundred dollars."

"Only five hundred dollars," Mary thought.

"It's a pity I have no money about me."

She gave the chain back to the shop assistant and said, "Thank you. I think my husband and I will come and buy it tomorrow. Are you open tomorrow?"

"Yes, madam, we work from 8 till 6. The lunch hour is from 12 to 1. You're welcome, madam."

Mary was about to leave the shop when somebody took her by the hand. She turned round and saw a small young girl, who looked very unhappy. She was wearing an old thin coat and old dirty shoes. She had no gloves or hat.

"Yes," said Mary. "What can I do for you?"

"Excuse me, madam, but can you give me the price of a cup of tea? I'm very cold."

"Have you no money at all?"

---

\* a chain of pearls — жемчужное ожерелье

"No," said the girl.

Suddenly Mary thought of a plan. "Come and have tea with me at my place," she said...

1) Listen to the story again and answer the following questions:

1. What season was it?
2. Where was Mary driving?
3. Why did she stop her car?
4. Was Mary rich?
5. Did she buy the pearls?
6. What did girl look like?
7. Where did Mary drive after the shop?

2) Finish the story and give it a title.

*XVI. Read and reproduce the jokes:*

1. Mother asked her small daughter who was reading a book:

"What are you reading, dear?"

"I don't know," answered the girl.

"You don't know? You were reading aloud, and you don't know?"

"I was reading aloud, Mummy, but I was not listening," the child explained.

2. Bessie is a little girl. She is only five. She does not go to school, and, of course, she does not know how to read or write. Her sister Mary is a schoolgirl. She is ten. One day Mary sees her little sister at the table with a pen in her hand and a big sheet of paper in front of her.

"What are you doing, Bessie?" she says.

"I am writing a letter to my friend Kitty," says Bessie.

"But how can you?" says her sister. "You don't know how to write!"

"Well," says Bessie, "it doesn't matter, because Kitty doesn't know how to read."

3. *Grandfather*: Why are you crying, my little girl?

*Ann*: Because my brother has holidays and I don't.

*Grandfather*: Why don't you have holidays?

*Ann*: Because I don't go to school.

### XVII. Things to do:

1. You want to open a department store. Advertise it.
2. Ask each other: a) what you are doing now; b) what you were doing ten minutes ago (two hours ago, at 5 o'clock, etc.); c) what he is going to do in an hour (after lunch...).
3. Guess what your friend was doing at 6 o'clock, etc. Begin with: "I think (believe)..."
4. Interview people in the shop asking what they are doing there, what they are going to buy.
5. On cards write down the names of the things you need to buy: a) at the butcher's, baker's, greengrocer's; b) in the supermarket; c) at a department store, etc.
6. Make up a telephone conversation with your friend: a) ask her/him what he/she is doing; b) invite her/him to go shopping with you.
7. Find out what you can buy: a) in a supermarket; b) in the nearest shop; c) for a picnic; d) for a birthday party.
8. Arrange a fashion show.

### XVIII. Poems and songs to enjoy:

#### 1. **Surprise Party**

*Tommy*: When I reached my house at seven,  
Max was playing the guitar,

Jane was sitting at the table  
Eating pickles from a jar.

Ted was sitting at the piano,  
Playing sonatas to Louise.  
And my parrot Paul was singing  
All the songs and melodies.

Bob was sleeping under the table,  
He couldn't even stay awake, and my dog was in  
the kitchen  
Eating off the birthday cake.

2.

At eight o'clock in the morning  
for our breakfast we'll see  
Cornflakes and buttered toast  
— And let's have a cup of tea!



At four o'clock in the afternoon  
There'll be food for you and me!  
Cream cakes and sandwiches  
— And let's have a cup of tea!  
At seven o'clock in the evening  
A lovely supper we'll see,  
Chips, peas and fish fingers  
— And let's have a cup of tea!  
At ten o'clock at night  
We'll have a piece of bread  
And I'll make a cup of tea  
And then we'll go to bed.

3. **She'll Be Coming Round the Mountain**

She'll be coming round the mountain, when she comes,  
She'll be coming round the mountain, when she comes.  
She'll be coming round the mountain, she'll be coming  
round the mountain,

She'll be coming round the mountain, when she comes.

She'll be driving six white horses, when she comes,  
She'll be driving six white horses, when she comes,  
She'll be driving six white horses, she'll be driving six  
white horses,

She'll be driving six white horses, when she comes.

And we'll all go out to meet her, when she comes,  
And we'll all go out to meet her, when she comes,  
And we'll all go out to meet her, and we'll all go out to meet her,  
And we'll all go out to meet her, when she comes.

And we'll all have chicken dumplings, when she comes,  
And we'll all have chicken dumplings, when she comes,  
And we'll all have chicken dumplings, and we'll all have  
chicken dumplings,

And we'll all have chicken dumplings, when she comes.

4. Hello! Hello! My name's Joe Manroe  
And I'm calling from Indiana.  
Can I speak to Diana, please?  
Am I speaking to my Diana?  
Oh, no, no, no  
I'm not Diana,  
I think that you've got the wrong number, my friend,

- 1) You've dialed a hotel in Montana.
- 2) You've dialed a garage in Montana.
- 3) You've dialed a café in Montana.

## UNIT VIII

### MEALS IN AN ENGLISH FAMILY

**Grammar:** The Present Perfect Tense.  
Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I. [ʊ]	II. [u:]	III. [ju:]
put	flu	tune
full	boot	cube
look	moon	due
cook	food	new
good	noon	few
shook	fruit	stew
book	tuna	music
IV. [tʃ]	V. [dʒ]	VI. [tʃ] — [dʒ]
chin	just	chin — gin
cheap	joy	cheap — jeep
choice	jam	charm — jar
child	June	chest — jest
teach	age	choke — joke
watch	enjoy	



- VII. 1. It looks good. 5. Who'll do the rooms?  
 2. Good morning. 6. Do as I do...  
 3. She has good looks. 7. Let's have news of you  
 4. Here's your cookbook. soon.

- VIII. 1. Which is which? 4. Just imagine!  
 2. What a charming child! 5. Change the subject.  
 3. Check your watch. 6. Jim's just my age.

IX. The art of Biography  
 Is different from Geography.  
 Geography is about maps,  
 Biography is about chaps.

X. Duty of the Student  
 It is the duty of the student  
 Without exception to be prudent.  
 If smarter than his teacher, tact  
 Demands that he conceals the fact.  
 (By Edward Anthony)

### Vocabulary

meal — еда (трапеза)  
 We have four meals a day. — Мы  
 едим четыре раза в день.  
 dish — блюдо  
 fish dish — рыбное блюдо  
 boiled egg — вареное яйцо  
 beer — пиво  
 tongue — язык  
 sausage — колбаса  
 apricot — абрикос  
 ham — ветчина, окорок  
 mutton chop — баранья котлета  
 roast meat — жареное мясо  
 fried fish — жареная рыба

substantial — основательный  
 (im)possible — (не)возможный  
 to follow — следовать  
 to have a chat — поболтать  
 to consist of — состоять из  
 course — блюдо  
 for the first course — на первое  
 dessert (= sweet dish) — десерт  
 soup [su:p] — суп  
 chicken broth — куриный бульон  
 biscuits — печенье  
 pie — пирог  
 plate — тарелка  
 knife — нож

for tea" in England. People often come in for a chat with their cup of tea. Some English families like to have the so called "high tea" which is quite a substantial meal. They have it between 5 and 6 o'clock. It usually consists of ham or tongue, tomatoes, salad or sausage with strong tea, bread and butter, then stewed fruit, or apricots with cream or a cake.

The main meal of the day is called dinner. Dinner is eaten either in the middle of the day or in the evening. The midday meal usually consists of two courses — a meat course with a lot of vegetables and a soup.

Help yourself to some salad. — *Попробуйте салат.*

I've got that. — *Я понял.*

Good health is above wealth. — *Здоровье всего дороже.*

for a change — *для разнообразия*

Bring me a napkin, please. — *Принесите мне салфетку, пожалуйста.*

Pass me salt, please. — *Передайте соль, пожалуйста.*

Have a drop of brandy. — *Выпей немного бренди.*

Tastes differ. — *О вкусах не спорят.*

### ☺☹ Dialogues

#### 1. Dinner with Friends

*Ted:* Hello!

*Bob:* Hello, Ted. Hello, Helen. Come in. Dinner is nearly ready.

*Ted:* Where's Ann?

*Bob:* Oh, she's in the kitchen. She'll be here in a minute. Go into the dining room, please. How about a drink before dinner?

*Ted:* That's a good idea!

*Ann:* Here we are! Dinner's ready. Let's start with salad.

*Helen:* Thank you, Ann. It looks wonderful and it smells delicious, too.

fork — вилка	taste — вкус
spoon — ложка	to taste smth. — попробовать
to be hungry — хотеть есть	tasty — вкусный
to be thirsty — хотеть пить	to smell — нюхать; пахнуть
to have a snack — перекусить	delicious (= tasty) — вкусный
health — здоровье	to be on a slimming diet — быть на диете с целью похудеть
healthy — здоровый	recipe ['resipi] — рецепт
in perfect health — в полном здравии	green peas — зеленый горошек
motto — девиз	rice — рис
waiter — официант	porridge — овсяная каша
waitress — официантка	cereals ['sɛriə] — сухие полуфабрикаты из дробленого зерна; крупы
to order — заказать	cornflakes — кукурузные хлопья
to lay the table — накрыть на стол	

### Text

#### MEALS IN AN ENGLISH FAMILY

The usual meals in England are: breakfast, lunch, tea and dinner, or in simpler houses, breakfast, dinner, tea and supper. In England mealtimes are as follows: breakfast time is between 7 and 9 a.m., lunch time is between 12 and 2 p.m., dinner is between 7 and 10 p.m.

Breakfast is generally the bigger meal than you have on the Continent. Usual breakfast is porridge, bacon and eggs, marmalade with buttered toast and tea or coffee. For a change you can have a boiled egg, cold ham or perhaps fish. Breakfast is often a quick meal, because the father of the family has to get away to his work, children have to go to school, and the mother has her housework to do.

Englishmen generally have lunch at one o'clock p.m. The businessmen usually find it impossible to come for lunch and so they go to a café or a restaurant where they usually find a mutton chop, or cold meat, or fish with potatoes, salad, then a pudding or fruit to follow. Some people like a glass of beer with lunch.

Afternoon tea you can hardly call a meal, but for some people it has become a tradition. At this time "everything stops



Would you like some more vegetables?

*Ann:* Shall I serve some roast meat?

*Helen:* No, it's all right. I can help myself.

*Ann:* Bob, will you pour the wine, please? Ted, help yourself to vegetables, too.

*Bob:* Would you like some more brandy, Helen?

*Helen:* Oh, no, thanks... no more for me. I'm driving tonight. I'd better help Ann with the washing-up.

*Bob:* The washing-up? No, no, don't worry. We always leave that until the morning.

2.

### Tastes Differ

— Are you hungry?

— Oh, yes, I am.

— And I'm awfully thirsty.

— Would you like a glass of orange juice?

— Thanks, I'd love one. I like orange juice very much.

— And I prefer apple juice.

— All juices are good for health: tomato, apple, apricot and of course, pineapple juice.

3.

— What shall we have?

— A three-course meal, I suppose. I'm hungry.

- Well, you choose.
- Let's start with salad, then chicken broth, fish and chips.
- I think, I'll have green peas, fruit and a cup of tea without sugar.
- Are you on a slimming diet?
- Yes, I am. I don't live to eat, I eat to live.
- As for me, I enjoy good food. My motto is "Eat at pleasure, drink with measure, and enjoy life as it is."

4.

- Tom!
- Yes, sir.
- I want an early lunch today.
- Yes, sir. What time?
- Twelve o'clock, and, please, lay the table for six.
- Yes, sir.
- And, please, lay the table carefully. Put silver spoons, forks and knives. Don't forget the crystal wine glasses Mary Brown has given us as a present. We are having very important guests tonight.
- Yes, sir. Anything else?
- Be careful about the Japanese plates. Don't break them. They're very expensive.
- No, sir, I won't. I'll be very careful.

5.

- Hello, John. We're having lunch. Would you like to have lunch with us?
- No, thank you, Mary. I've already had lunch at half past one.
- Have a cup of coffee then.
- I've just had one. Thank you. I had cup of coffee after my lunch.
- Have an apple then.

- No, thank you, I've just had one. I had one half an hour ago.
- Have a drop of brandy then.
- Oh, I've taken one but I'd do with one more.

6.

- Thank you very much. The dinner has been delicious.
- I'm glad you liked it. I was so worried when I was cooking. I wasn't sure if you would like Chinese food. Tastes differ, you know.

7.

- Have you had your lunch yet?
- No, not yet.
- How about going to the café across the street? They serve good food there. And there is a wide choice of cakes and ice cream you like so much.
- OK! It's a great idea!

8.

*Waiter:* (answering a phone call): Dino's Restaurant.  
Good evening.

*Customer:* Good evening. I'd like to book a table for this evening.

*Waiter:* Certainly, sir. For how many?

*Customer:* For four.

*Waiter:* Right. For what time?

*Customer:* 8.30.

*Waiter:* 8.30 for four. And what name is it, please?

*Customer:* Smith. S-M-I-T-H.

*Waiter:* Right. I've got that. We'll see you at 8.30 then, sir.

9.

- Waiter! These vegetables aren't fresh.
- But they are fresh, sir.
- Well, they don't taste fresh to me.

- I'm sorry, sir.  
— And the tablecloth, it's so dirty. Can you bring a cleaner one? And I want a napkin, too.  
— I'll get the manager, sir.

### Exercises

#### *I. Use the right word:*

vitamins; the food; bread; apple; salad; vegetables; bar of chocolate; lunch; meat; rice; green peas; consists; substantial; bacon and eggs (2); toast (2); breakfast (2); eat (2); meal; tea; healthy; food.

A. What about ... people eat! I know a man who only eats healthy ...; he takes a lot of ... . I've never seen anybody who looks so ill! I like good food and I think most ... food is really tasteless. For ... I usually have ... and coffee, and at weekends when I have more time I have ... . I get ... in the middle of the morning, I have a ... , then a sandwich made with white ... , of course. After day's work in the office I'm pretty hungry and in the evenings I like a big ... of ... and ... . My ill-looking friend is horrified by what I ... : his breakfast is some cheese with a cup of ... and an ... . For lunch he has ... and in the evening ... and ... . He says it's very good for him but I'm not so sure.

B. Everyone has heard of the English ... . When someone says to you "breakfast in England," what do you think first? ... , of course. Actually very many people nowadays have what they call a "Continental breakfast," which ... of coffee and ... — nothing more. But there are families where they ... a ... "proper" breakfast.

#### *II. Finish the following:*

1. The English usually have soup, meat and salad and an apple pie for ... . 2. I like porridge with milk and a cup of

coffee for ... . 3. Do you take your tea with ... ? 4. In England the last meal of the day is ... . 5. When we come home in the evening we usually have ... . 6. Here is the menu. What would you like to ... ? 7. What would you prefer for desert? — I'd like ... . 8. Let's go to the café. — Thank you, ... . 9. I'm on a slimming diet, so for breakfast I only have ... . 10. I usually have four ... . 11. They are coming in five minutes. Lay ... . Don't forget ... . 12. Where are you going to celebrate your birthday? — I think ... .

### III. Make up sentences:

**Model:** I like an egg and tea with bread and butter for breakfast.

toast	breakfast
juice	
boiled eggs	lunch
fried fish	
biscuits	dinner
a cake	
an apple pie	supper
cheese	
chicken broth	the first course
chocolates	
sweets	the second course
milk	
coffee	the dessert
cereal	
sandwiches	the sweet dish
fresh salad	
roast meat	a snack
tomato soup	

IV. Say what you (your friend, etc.) have had for breakfast, dinner... today.



*V. Answer the following questions:*

1. Have you ever been to Great Britain or the US?
2. Have you had your leave this year?
3. Have you seen the new film?
4. What films have you seen this month?
5. Have you come by the metro today?
6. Have you had your lunch yet? What have you had for lunch?
7. What books have you read lately?
8. Have you read any English books?
9. How long have you worked here?
10. How long have you been married?
11. Have you been to the shop today? What have you bought? How much have you paid?
12. Do you learn English? When did you begin to learn it? Did you know English when you were a child? How long have you learned English?
13. Does your friend know English? How well does she/he know it? How long has she/he learned it?
14. Have you ever spoken to English-speaking foreigners? When did you speak to them? Was it difficult for you to speak English?

*VI. Complete the following sentence:*

**Model:** It's cold in the room. (the window/be open/for a long time) —

The window **has been** open for a long time.

1. Peter isn't in class. (he/be ill/for a week)
2. She doesn't know the way there. (she/never/be there)
3. He knows English well. (he/live in England/for three years)
4. Don't ask me about the film. (I/not to see/it)
5. Don't describe the place to me. (I/be there/several times)
6. I know him very well. (we/be friends/since childhood)
7. How is he? (I/not to see him/lately)
8. There is nobody in the house (everybody/to leave)
9. I

am not hungry. (I/have lunch/already) 10. I don't need the menu. (I/make an order) 11. She is too thin. (she/be on a diet/for a month) 12. Have a cup of tea with me. (I/bake/a new cake).

*VII. Write the possible answers. Use Present Perfect.*

1. Why are you looking so happy?
2. Why are you looking so sad?
3. Why is your friend so angry?
4. Why is Ann crying?
5. Why are the students laughing?

(to get a letter from home; to pass the exam; to fail the exam; to lose one's bag; to hear a funny story; to get a ticket to the Bolshoi; to hear bad news; to win the first prize; to hear good news...)

*VIII. Use Present Perfect or Past Indefinite:*

1. I (to have) my breakfast. I'm not hungry. 2. He (to have) his breakfast an hour ago. 3. The Smiths (to invite) us to dinner last Saturday. 4. They (to invite) many guests to their Christmas party. 5. We (to buy) a lot of things, put them into the fridge. 6. We went shopping yesterday and (to buy) a lot of things. 7. She (to be) to London a lot of times. 8. She (to be) in London last month. 9. I never (to taste) Indian food. 10. I (to taste) Indian food when we were at the restaurant. 11. They (not to write) to us since they moved to a new flat. 12. When they (to write) to you last? 13. How long you (to learn) English? 14. I (to learn) English long ago.

*IX. Use Present Perfect or Present Indefinite:*

1. Our family (to eat) dinner at home on Saturdays and Sundays. 2. Our family (to eat) dinner at home since grandma came to live with us. 3. I (to know) Alice very well. 4. I (to know) Alice since school time. 5. Mr. Brook (to be) our

English teacher. 6. Mr. Brook (to be) our English teacher for a year. 7. They (to be married) for 10 years. 8. They (to be married). 9. You (to live) in Moscow all your life? 10. You (to live) in Moscow? 11. He (to work) at this office long? 12. He (to work) at this office?

*X. Change the sentences using Present Perfect Continuous:*

**Model:** Ted is playing football (for an hour). —

Ted **has been playing** football for an hour.

1. It is raining (ever since morning). 2. Jane is talking on the phone (for a whole hour). 3. Mr. Greene is looking through papers (since we came). 4. I am writing a letter (for half an hour). 5. Mother is washing up (since we finished dinner). 6. The students are writing a test (for an hour and a half). 7. You are thinking about her (for the last few days). 8. The children are watching TV (the whole day).

*XI. Use the Present Perfect Tense:*

1. Check your diary (дневник) and write what you have and what you haven't done this week and hy.

2. Look through the diary and write which of the things you planned to do you have done and which of them you haven't done.

3. Think of 5 good things you've done this year and of 5 important things you haven't done.

*XII. Use the verbs in brackets in the right tense form:*

**A Letter from Moscow**

Mike (to live) in Moscow. His girlfriend Lucy (to study) French in Paris. She (to be) there for five weeks. Mike (to stay) in Moscow for about a year. He (to want) to visit Lucy in Paris and (to write) a letter to her. She just (to receive) this letter from him.

"Dear Lucy,

I'm sorry I (not to write) to you for two weeks, but I (to have) a lot of homework to do. I (to have) my exams in a month and Russian (to be) very difficult. I (to be) very glad that I (to go) and see you in Paris this summer. I (to hope) you (to show) me something of Paris. When you (to see) me you (not to recognize\*) me. I (to become) so thin! Food (to be) very expensive here, and I (to have) only one meal a day. But I (to make) many friends in Moscow and sometimes they (to invite) me to coffee or tea. By the way\*\*, I (to have) a cup of coffee now and I (to think) about you, dear Lucy. I (to hope) to hear from you soon\*\*\*.

Love,  
Mike."

### XIII. Use the right form of the adjective:

#### A. The Best and the Worst

Joe Brown has the (beautiful) garden in our town. Nearly everybody enters for "The (nice) Garden Competition" each year but Joe wins every time. Bill's garden is (large) than Joe's. Bill works (hard) than Joe and grows (many) flowers and vegetables, but Joe's garden is (interesting). I like gardens too, but I don't like hard work. Every year I enter for "The Garden Competition" too and I always win a little prize for the (bad) garden in the town.

#### B. \* \* \*

I have seen the seven wonders of the world\*\*\*\* and if there is an eighth I have seen it too. I have walked through the (won-

\* to recognize — *узнавать*

\*\* by the way — *между прочим*

\*\*\* to hear from smb. — *получить от кого-л. весточку*

\*\*\*\* the seven wonders of the world — *семь чудес света*

derful) public parks of every civilized and uncivilized country in the world. I have slept in the (fine) beds of the (fashionable) hotels of the (big) cities of the (good) countries. I have eaten the (tasty) foods on Earth, I have spent long afternoons in the (beautiful) gardens of the (rich) people on Earth drinking green tea, reading the (cheap) novels and smoking the (expensive) cigars. I have played poker with the (famous) people — with the Prince of Wales and with the Countess of Strassbourg. Seven of the wonders I have seen, but the (good) place for me is Beale Street.

(After W. Saroyan)

### C. Carol's Apple Cake

Carol baked an apple cake yesterday, but she couldn't follow all the instructions in her cookbook because she didn't have enough of the ingredients. She used (little) flour\* and (few) eggs than the recipe required. She also used (little) butter, (few) apples, (few) raisins\*\* and (little) sugar than she needed. As a result Carol's apple cake didn't taste very good. In fact it tasted terrible.

XIV. Finish the text using the adjectives in the comparative degree:

Susan and Sally are twins\*\*\*. They are very much alike. They are both young, tall and pretty, fair-haired and blue-eyed. Their hair is long and thick. They wear short bright dresses. They are kind and hard-working. They are good cooks and good students. They read many interesting books. But some people say that Sally is more beautiful than Susan... .

(tall; pretty; long and thick hair; short and bright dresses; kind; hard-working; good; intelligent)

\* flour [ˈflaʊə] — мука

\*\* raisins — изюм

\*\*\* twins — близнецы



### XVIII. Use prepositions or adverbs:

#### Irish Stew\*

One day, when the three friends and their dog were very hungry, George said, "I'll make an Irish Stew ... dinner. I'll use some vegetables, the cold beef and some other things left over ... our breakfast." It seemed ... them a wonderful idea. George made a fire, took a pot and poured some river water ... it. Then he put a dozen ... potatoes, a cabbage and about half a peck ... peas ... the pot. Harris added all the left-overs ... the stew; then he found half a tin ... salmon\*\* and a couple ... eggs, and put them ... , too. There were some other ingredients that they put ... the pot. And ... last the dog appeared ... a dead water rat ... his mouth which was his contribution ... the dinner. The three friends had a discussion whether or not to put the rat ... the stew. Harris said that it would be all right mixed ... the other things, but George said, "I've never heard ... water rats ... Irish Stew. So, to be on the safe side\*\*\*, let's not try experiments." "If you never try a new thing, how can you tell what it's like!

\* stew [stju:] — жаркое

\*\* salmon ['sælmən] — семга, лососина

\*\*\* to be on the safe side — на всякий случай

Think ... the man who first tried German sausage!" That Irish Stew was really wonderful. There was something fresh ... the meal, it had a new flavour, ... a taste like nothing else ... earth.

(After Jerome K. Jerome)

*Read the story again and 1) make a list of the ingredients of the Irish Stew the three friends made; 2) say if you think it was really delicious; 3) suggest your own recipe of some exotic dish.*

*XIX. Look through the menu and say what you'd like to have. Say why you have chosen this dish. Begin your answers with "I have chosen ... because it's cheaper" or "I have chosen bananas because they are more exotic."*

### "Country Inn" Restaurant Menu

#### Starters

Tomato juice	50 c
Orange juice	50 c
Tomato soup	75 c
Onion soup	75 c

#### Main courses

Grilled steak	\$3,50
Egg and bacon pie	\$2,50
Cheese and tomato pizza	\$2
Hamburger	\$1,50
Spanish omelet	\$2
with	
Mixed salad	75 c
Mixed vegetables	75 c
Baked potatoes	50 c
French fries	50 c

#### Desserts

Apple pie	\$1
-----------	-----

Cheese cake	75 c
Fruit salad	75 c
Banana cream	75 c
Ice cream	50 c
Pineapples	\$1 (a piece)

**Drinks**

Coke. Beer. Milk. Coffee.	50 c
---------------------------	------

**XX. Translate into English:**

1. Сколько раз в день вы едите? 2. Дама сказала, что она никогда ничего не ест на завтрак. 3. Кого вы пригласили на обед? 4. Мы основательно позавтракали. Завтрак состоял из вареных яиц, сэндвичей с ветчиной и овощами, сыра, масла и кофе с молоком. 5. Я не люблю жареную рыбу. 6. Вы уже обедали? У нас хорошее кафе на первом этаже, где качественное обслуживание и приемлемые цены. 7. Садитесь, пожалуйста, завтракать, я уже накрыла на стол. 8. Пить чай в 5 часов — традиция в Англии. Многие пьют чай с молоком или сливками. 9. Американцы не любят готовить, но тщательно следят за тем, что едят. Они стараются выбирать здоровую пищу, едят мало мяса и рыбы, но много овощей и фруктов. 10. В России хлеб очень вкусный, его едят с первым и вторым блюдом, с колбасой, ветчиной, вареньем. 11. Я уже месяц на диете. Все это время я не ем тортов, пирогов, шоколада, пью чай и кофе без сахара. Мне это надоело. 12. Спасибо! Обед был прекрасный. А кто готовил салат? Он нам очень понравился. Я бы хотела взять рецепт. 13. — Хотите есть? — Нет, спасибо. Я перекусил в студенческой столовой. 14. Вчера я покупала много продуктов. Неужели мы уже все съели? 15. Кто сегодня будет готовить ужин? 16. — Вы пообедаете с нами? — Нет, спасибо, у меня был перерыв с часу до двух, и я сходил в кафе.



## XXI. 1) Read the dialogue:

**Breakfast at a Hotel**

*Waiter:* Good morning! What would you like to order?

*Tom:* Could I see the menu, please? Thank you. I'd like some grape juice and cereal to start with. Then bacon and eggs, make them soft-boiled, please.

*Jean:* Oh, I could not eat all that. It's too much. I'll just have toast and marmalade.

*Waiter:* Thank you. Would you prefer coffee or tea?

*Tom:* Coffee, I think, what about you, dear?

*Jean:* I prefer tea.

2) Say which breakfast you would choose: a real English breakfast like Tom — or a light Continental breakfast like Jean?

3) Is it wise to take the English breakfast and eat less for lunch and dinner?

4) Do you agree with what an expert says about good eating habits: "If our food has few vitamins we get ill. Green vegetables are especially important for our health"?

## XXII. Read the stories and retell them:

A. A friend of mine who lives in England decided to go over to France for a trip. When he returned I asked him how he liked it.

"Terrible," was the answer. "I couldn't get a nice cup of tea anywhere. Thank goodness I'm back."

I asked him, "Didn't you have any good food while you were there?"

"Oh, the dinners were all right," he said. "I found a little place where they made quite good fish and chips. Not as good as ours, but they were eatable. But the breakfasts were terrible: no bacon or porridge. I had fried eggs and bacon but

it took them too long to make them. They gave me rolls\*. And when I asked for marmalade, they brought strawberry jam. And you know, they said it was marmalade!"

"But didn't you eat any of the famous French food?"

"What? Me? Of course not! Give me good old English food every time! None of these fancy bits for me!"

## B. An Expensive Breakfast

Once the king of a small country was travelling about Holland. He stopped at an inn in a little village to have breakfast. He ordered some boiled eggs, coffee, bread and butter for breakfast.

The king ate two eggs with bread and butter, took a cup of coffee and asked the innkeeper, "How much must I pay for my breakfast?"

The innkeeper answered: "A hundred florins."

The king was very much surprised and said, "What? A hundred florins for a little bread and butter, a cup of coffee and two eggs? It is very expensive! Are eggs scarce\*\* in your village?"

"No, sir," answered the innkeeper, "there are a lot of eggs in our village, but kings are very scarce nowadays."

C. Two Americans were travelling in Spain. One morning they came into a little restaurant for lunch. They did not know Spanish and their waiter did not know English. They wanted him to understand that they wanted some milk and sandwiches. So one of them took a piece of paper and began to draw a cow. He was finishing his drawing, when the waiter looked at it and ran out of the restaurant. He was back again soon, but he brought no milk. He put down in front of the two men two tickets for a bull fight\*\*\*.

\* rolls — булочки

\*\* scarce [skeəʃ] — редкий, недостаточный

\*\*\* a bull fight — бой быков

D. Once a young Englishman invited his girlfriend to a French restaurant. The menu was written in French and he did not know French. As he did not want to look ignorant\* before the girl, he pointed to some lines in the menu and said to the waiter, "I think, we shall have some of that."

The waiter looked where the man was showing and said, "I'm sorry, sir, but that's what the band is playing."

*XXIII. Read the text:*

### How to Be Fit

Hello. Our programme today is called "How to Be Fit." The whole world admires\*\* the beautiful models and film stars you so often see on TV. They are tall, slim, long-legged. You see them and you want to look like them. But do you know how to do it? The problem is that people eat too much today. Besides, who can refuse a piece of nice sweet cake or a cup of sweet chocolate? Some people can. Our guest today is the famous Linda Martin, a film star. She will tell you how she keeps fit.

"Hello. My name is Linda Martin. Let me tell you a few important things about my life. I don't get up very early but I begin my day with exercises. I go out and run about my house twenty times. Then I get hungry and have breakfast. I have a big glass of orange juice and then a cup of coffee. At about one I have my lunch. At lunch I eat a lot of vegetables: cabbage, carrots, peas, fresh cucumbers, a piece of rye bread and a cup of tea without sugar, of course. Sometimes I don't have any lunch at all if I'm at work. I don't like to have meals in public places. I sometimes have dinner in the evening when I'm hungry or when I have guests at home. I don't like to receive guests because we usually eat a lot of meat and fish and other heavy

\* ignorant — невежда

\*\* to admire [ə'dmaɪə] — восхищаться

things which don't help you to be fit. My motto is 'Eat to live, but not live to eat.' And, dear ladies, always remember you are as old as you look. That's why I have always played only young girls."

*Read the text again and say*

- 1) what Linda Martin eats to keep fit;
- 2) why she doesn't like to receive guests;
- 3) if you can keep the same diet;
- 4) if she tells the truth;
- 5) how old she is.

*XXIV. Things to do:*

1. You are a doctor. Make a list of Dos and Don'ts. What you recommend to eat and what you don't to
  - a) a thin person;
  - b) a fat person.
2. Make a recipe of your favourite dish (fish, meat, cake, fruit salad, etc.).
3. Say if you have ever been on a slimming diet and if you know any effective diet. Describe it.
4. Make up a menu for:
  - a) your mother's (child's, wife's, husband's, etc.) birthday party;
  - b) your aunt who is on a slimming diet;
  - c) your uncle who likes to eat much;
  - d) your cousin who is a sweet tooth (сладкоежка).
5. Interview people. You may begin your interview with:
  - a) Are you married? How long have you been married?
  - b) Where do you work? How long have you worked?
  - c) Do you speak English? How long have you spoken it?
  - d) Where do you live? How long have you lived there?
  - e) Have you been abroad? When did you go there?

*XXV. Poems and songs to enjoy:*1. **Little Girl**

"Little girl, little girl,  
Where have you been?"  
"I've been to see grandmother  
Over the green."  
"What did she give you?"  
"Milk in a can."  
"What did you say for it?"  
"Thank you, Grandam."

2. **On a Diet**

First she gave up smoking,  
Then she gave up gin,  
Then she gave up chocolate cake,  
She wanted to be thin.

Then she gave up breakfast,  
Then she gave up lunch.  
On lazy Sunday mornings  
She even gave up brunch.

No matter what she gave up  
Her skirts were very tight.  
Cause she ate twelve cans of tuna fish  
For dinner every night.

3. **Have you ever seen the beaches of Mexico?  
Have you ever walked the streets of San Juan?  
Have you ever been to Haiti?  
Have you ever been to Spain?  
Have you ever walked barefoot in a heavy rain?**

Have you ever been in trouble?  
Have you ever been in pain?

Have you ever been in love?  
 Would you do it all again?

Well, I've never seen the beaches of Mexico,  
 Well, I've never walked the streets of San Juan,  
 Well, I've never been to Haiti,  
 Well, I've never been to Spain,  
 Well, I've never walked barefoot in a heavy rain.  
 But I've sure been in trouble,  
 But I've sure been in pain,  
 But I've sure been in love  
 I'd do it all again.



### My Bonnie

My Bonnie is over the ocean,  
 My Bonnie is over the sea,  
 My Bonnie is over the ocean,  
 O bring back my Bonnie to me.

#### Chorus:

Bring back, bring back, bring back my Bonnie to me, to me;  
 Bring back, bring back, O bring back my Bonnie to me.

O blow ye winds over the ocean,  
 O blow ye winds over the sea,  
 O blow ye winds over the ocean,  
 And bring back my Bonnie to me.

Last night as I lay on my pillow,  
 Last night as I lay on my bed,  
 Last night as I lay on my pillow,  
 I dreamed that my Bonnie was dead.

The winds have blown over the ocean,  
 The winds have blown over the sea,  
 The winds have blown over the ocean,  
 And brought back my Bonnie to me.

5.

**Brighton in the Rain**

I've never been to Athens and I've never been to Rome,  
I've only seen the Pyramids in picture books at home.  
I've never sailed across the sea or been inside a plane,  
I've always spent my holidays in Brighton in the rain.

I've never eaten foreign food or drunk in a foreign bar,  
I've never kissed a foreign girl or driven a foreign car,  
I've never had to find my way in a country I don't know,  
I've always known just where I am and where I'll never go.  
I've read travel books by writers who have been to Pakistan,  
I've heard people telling stories of adventures in Iran,  
I've watched TV documentaries about China and Brazil,  
But I've never been abroad myself: It's making me feel ill.

I've studied several languages like Hindi and Malay,  
I've learnt lots of useful sentences I've never been able to say,  
The furthest place I've ever been was to the Isle of Man  
And that was full of tourists from Jamaica and Japan.

I've never been to Athens and I've never been to Rome,  
I've only seen the Pyramids in picture books at home,  
I've never sailed across the sea or been inside a plane,  
I've always spent my holidays in Brighton in the rain.





## UNIT IX

### WEATHER AND CLIMATE

Grammar: Degrees of Comparison (продолжение).  
Modal Verbs (модальные глаголы).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I. [v]	II. [w]	III. [v]	—	[w]	IV. [h]
vest	well	vest	—	west	hat how
very	west	vent	—	went	habit house
veil	wave	vine	—	wine	heat hair
voice	why	vim	—	whim	hit her
vast	work	vile	—	while	him horse
vote	world	verse	—	worse	head heavy

- V.
1. I've never heard of Steve.
  2. I've given Vic the best of advice.
  3. They've arrived at five.
  4. Don't worry, be happy.
  5. Why worry?
  6. One word to the wise.
  7. We'll walk whatever the weather.
- VI. Very well, very well, very well, very well...
- VII.
1. Her house has high windows.
  2. He had a hat on his head.
  3. Happy holiday!

VIII. Whether the weather be fine,  
 Whether the weather be not,  
 Whether the weather be cold,  
 Or whether the weather be hot,  
 We'll weather the weather  
 Whatever the weather  
 Whether we like it or not.

IX. Oh, wind, why do you never rest?  
 Wandering, whistling to and fro?  
 Bringing rain out of the west  
 From the dim north bringing snow?

### U Vocabulary

**climate** ['klaɪmɪt] — климат

**mild** — мягкий (о климате)

**weather** — погода

**weather forecast** — прогноз погоды

**to consider** — принимать во внимание

**to change for the better (worse)** — измениться к лучшему (ухудшиться)

**changeable** — изменчивый

**it looks like rain** — скоро пойдет дождь

**frost** — мороз

**frosty** — морозный

**to freeze (froze, frozen)** — заморозить

**to go skiing** — кататься на лыжах

**to go hunting** — охотиться

**below zero** — ниже 0°

**above zero** — выше 0°

**sunny** — солнечный

**to set** — заходить (о солнце)

**to get sunburnt** — загореть

**humid** — влажный

**dry** — сухой

**wet** — сырой

**heavy rain/snow** — сильный дождь/снег

**to sparkle** — сверкать

**wind** — ветер

**windy** — ветрено

**to blow (blew, blown)** — дуть

**dull** — пасмурный

**nasty** ['nɑ:sti] — плохой (о погоде)

**fog** — туман

**foggy** — туманно

**clear** — ясный (день, -ое небо)

**cloud** — облако

**cloudy** — облачно

**sky** — небо

**to be covered with** — быть покрытым чем-л.

**awful** ['ɔ:ful] — ужасный

**to be cold** — холодно; мерзнуть

**to be warm** — тепло

to get cold — замерзнуть	spring — весна
hot — жаркий, горячий	summer — лето
all the year round — круглый год	autumn [ˈɔ:təm] — осень
seasons — времена года	opportunity — возможность
winter — зима	native — родной

### Texts

#### I.

#### WEATHER AND CLIMATE

Where can you go for a holiday? You have a lot of opportunities. Of course, most people would like to go to the south or to the seaside, but you must consider the weather and the season.

You may want to go to Siberia, for example. The nature is wonderful there. You will never see such a lot of sparkling white snow. You will enjoy frosty fresh air if you go skiing or bear-hunting, but you should remember that it's very cold there in winter. The temperature may be about 50 degrees below zero.

Some people prefer to spend their holidays in warmer places. There is no warmer place than Africa. It's warm there all the year round. The sun shines every day, but in summer it's too hot and sometimes it's humid there. And you won't be able to go lion-hunting until the sun sets. But when it starts raining, it may rain the whole week. If you want to get sunburnt it's the best place. You can get as sunburnt as the natives\*.

Anyway choosing a place for your holiday you must consider the weather forecast.

#### II.

Paul and Alice live in Birmingham. It's a large city in the Midlands. They're planning a weekend holiday.

*Paul:* I say, Alice! Why don't we go to Scotland?

*Alice:* It's a very long way.

*Paul:* Oh, it isn't too far. Anyway, the motorway is very good, so we can get there quickly.

\* the natives — коренное население

- Alice:* But Scotland's often cold at this time of the year. It may snow!
- Paul:* Well, yes... it may... but I don't think it will.
- Alice:* I'm not sure. It is February, and I'm afraid of driving in snow. And we may not be able to find a hotel. They may be closed.
- Paul:* Oh, that's no problem. I can book a hotel room by phone.
- Alice:* Well, perhaps it's not a bad idea. We may have beautiful weather.
- Paul:* Oh, we'll enjoy ourselves anyway. Let's watch the weather forecast on television. We may not go to Scotland, we may go to Wales or London. We can decide after the forecast...

"Good evening, and here is the weather forecast for tomorrow. Northern Scotland will be cold, and there may be snow over high ground. In the north of England it will be a wet day and rain may move into Wales and the Midlands during the afternoon. East England will be generally dry, but it will be dull and cloudy. In southern England it will be a bright clear day with sunshine, but it may rain during the evening. In some places it may be foggy during the morning, but the afternoon will be clear. It may be windy later in the day."

Nice day, isn't it? — *Хороший день, не правда ли?*

What is the weather like in England? — *Какая погода в Англии?*

It gets on my nerves. — *Это действует мне на нервы.*

just in case — *на всякий случай*

You can never be too sure. — *Никогда нельзя быть уверенным.*

I suffer terribly from the cold. — *Я ужасно страдаю от холода.*

It is drizzling now. — *Моросит мелкий дождь.*

Indian Summer — *бабье лето*

☹☺ *Dialogues*

1. — It's a lovely day, isn't it?  
 — Yes, isn't the day fine?  
 — The sun... not a cloud in the sky...  
 — It's so nice and warm.  
 — Isn't it wonderful?
  
2. — Isn't the weather awful? It's raining cats and dogs. It's very wet. It was fine this morning, so I didn't bring my umbrella.  
 — Don't worry. You can have mine.  
 — Thank you very much. It's very kind of you.
  
3. — Nice day, isn't it? Fairly mild for this time of the year.  
 — Yes, it is.  
 — I like such weather. It's snowing, and it isn't very cold.

— But I like colder weather better. After all, winter must be winter.

4. — What is the weather like in England?  
 — The weather changes in our country more often than in other countries, that's why we say, "Other countries have a climate, in England we have weather."

— Are all the days alike in autumn?



It's very kind of you.

— Oh, no, it may be raining one day and the next day it may be sunny.

— Do Englishmen always have to wear raincoats and carry umbrellas in autumn?

— As a rule, they do.

5. — Lovely day, isn't it?

— Hmm, it's quite nice now, but I'm sure it may rain soon, you know I've got my umbrella with me, just in case.

— Yes, well, it could turn out wet or fine really, our English weather's so very changeable.

— But it's getting cold already. I think it'll be cold and dull all day.

— Hmm, it's very cold. My feet are freezing. I suffer terribly from the cold.

— It may snow. The weather forecast said snow in high places.

— Hmm, I don't know. But I think it might be windy tonight.

— Where's the bus? I'm frozen.

6. — What kind of weather do you like?

— I like all sorts of weather, when it's hot, warm or cold, frosty or cloudy, except windy weather. It gets on my nerves.

— The English say: there's no bad weather, there are bad clothes.

7. — Hi, Jack, This is Jim. I'm calling from Miami.

— From Miami? What are you doing in Miami?

— I'm on vacation.

— How's the weather in Miami? Is it sunny?

— No, it isn't. It's cloudy.

— Is it hot?

— No, it isn't. It's cold.

- Are you having a good time?  
 — No, I'm having a terrible time. The weather is terrible here.  
 — I'm sorry to hear that.

### Exercises

I. Use the words on the left side with those on the right side:

**Model:** high temperature.

strong	fog
humid	wind
light	climate
thick	snow
heavy	rain
cold	weather
warm	day
frosty	morning
rainy	night
windy	afternoon
terrible	season
dull	month
fine	forecast
nasty	clouds
dry	evening
wet	atmosphere
sunny	air
hot	

II. Change the following sentences using the models:

**Model A:** When the sun shines (sunny). — When the sun shines we say that the weather is **sunny**.

**Model B:** When the temperature is  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  (cold). — When the temperature is  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  we say it is **cold**.

- When it rains (rainy).
- When it drizzles (nasty).
- When a cold wind blows (windy).
- When a fog is spreading



What is the weather like?



(foggy). 5. When the frost is hard (frosty). 6. When it is warm (fine). 7. When the temperature is 25° above zero (hot). 8. When the temperature has fallen to 25° below zero (very cold). 9. When the sky is covered with clouds (cloudy). 10. When the weather changes very often (changeable). 11. When we have good weather at the beginning of September (Indian Summer).

### III. Use the right word:

fine; climate; warm; wet; weather (4); foggy; weather forecast (2); to rain; cold.

### Weather in Britain

British people say, "Other countries have a ... , in England we have ... ."

The ... in Britain changes very quickly. One day may be ... and the next day may be ... . The morning may be ... and the evening may be ... .

People talk about the ... more in Britain than in most parts of the world. When two Englishmen meet, if they can't think of anything else to talk about, they talk about the ... .

Every daily paper publishes the ... . Both the radio and television give the ... several times each day, warning\* drivers if it is ... and warning people to take their umbrellas if it is going ... .

### IV. Complete the dialogue (consult Exercise III):

#### On Weather

A. What is the weather like in England?

B. ... changes in this country more often than in other countries, that's why we say, "Other countries have ... ."

A. Are all the days alike in autumn?

\* to warn [wɔ:n] — предупредить

B. Oh, no, ... and the next day ... .

A. Look! The sky is covered with heavy dark ... and it's going ... .

B. It may, but you can never be sure.

A. ... it often rain in ... ?

B. ... is a rainy month. Look! The people in the street are opening ... .

A. Do Englishmen always ... raincoats and ... umbrellas in autumn?

B. As a rule, they do.

A. And what ... in winter?

B. Wintercoats, if ... .

A. What do Englishmen say to start a conversation?

B. ...

*V. Answer the questions:*

1. What is the weather like today?

2. What is the weather like today on the Black Sea coast (in the North Pole, in London, in Paris, in Australia, etc.)?

3. What's your favourite season and why?

4. Which is the coldest (hottest) month in your town (London, Tokyo, Paris, Rome, Boston)?

5. What is the weather like in winter (autumn) in Siberia (England, Canada, Japan, etc.)?

6. What kind of weather do you like (dislike)?

*VI. Read the weather forecast around the world:*

Amsterdam	+5°C	Bristol	+8°C
Athens	+18	Brussels	+7
Belgrade	+20	Budapest	+10
Berlin	+3	Cardiff	+8
Bermuda	+20	Copenhagen	+2
Birmingham	+7	Dublin	+8
Boston	+5	Edinburgh	+7

Florence	+16	Moscow	0
Helsinki	+1	Munich	+3
Hong Kong	+25	New York	+7
London	+10	Oslo	+2
Madrid	+20	Paris	+8
Miami	+24	Tokyo	+18

1. Look at the weather information and answer the questions: a) Which city is the coldest? b) What's the weather like in London? c) Where would you like to be? Why? d) Is it winter or summer in the United Kingdom (the USA)? e) Which part of the UK is the warmest? f) What's the weather like in Moscow?

2. Compare the temperature and the weather in different places. Begin your answers with:

A. "It is as cold in ... as in ... ."

B. "It is not so cold in ... as in ... ."

C. "It is warmer (colder) in ... than in ... ."

*VII. Make up short dialogues according to the models:*

**Model A:** — Can you swim?

— Yes, I can.

— How long have you been able to swim?

— I've been able to swim since I was 5.

**Model B:** — Can you swim?

— No, I can't. I've never been able to swim.

(speak English; play the piano; play tennis; sing; dance; cook; knit; drive; fly...)

*VIII. Use "can," "could," "may," "might," "to be able":*

— ... I come in?

— Yes, come in, please. What ... I do for you?

— I've read the advertisement. I'm looking for a job. ... you offer me something?

— Oh, yes. I need a secretary. But ... you give me your name first?

— I'm Mary Smith.

— Mary, ... I ask you a few questions?

— Certainly, sir.

— You ... call me Mr. Wilde. What ... you do? ... you type?

— Yes, I ... , and I ... take shorthand.

— Very good. How long ... to type?

— I ... to type since I studied it at school.

— ... you speak any foreign languages?

— Yes, I ... speak French and German and I ... understand Russian.

— ... you start work tomorrow?

— I think I ... , thank you. ... I go now?

— Yes, you ... . See you tomorrow.

#### IX. Use "must" or "needn't":

1. Must I tell the truth? — ... , it's important. 2. Must I go shopping? — ... , we have a lot of food. 3. Must I do this work now? — ... , you can do it later. 4. Must I type these papers today? — ... , I need them today. 5. Must I take the dog out for a walk? — ... , I'm busy now. 6. Must I come on Saturdays? — ... , it's your day off.

#### X. Use "must," "mustn't," "needn't," "have," "should," "shouldn't":

— Well, kids, this is Kelly, your baby-sitter for the time we're away. You ... be nice to her. Dad and I are sorry we ... leave you for a month, but we really ... .

— Hi, you ... be Sam, and this ... be the little Nancy.

— Oh, you ... be so noisy. Come, Kelly, we ... show you around the house. You ... do a lot of work. The only thing you ... do is feed them on time and look after them during the day.

- ... I go shopping?
- No, you ... , we have a housekeeper and a maid.
- ... I wash up?
- No, you ... , you ... do any work about the house.
- What time ... I come in the morning?
- You ... come at 9 and stay till 5, but you ... be late in the morning, and you ... allow Sam to stay out in the garden long. You ... be firm about it. If anything goes wrong, you ... phone us.
- You ... worry, I'll do my best.

### XI. Use modal verbs:

#### can, could, be able (to), must, have (to).

A. It was late autumn. A hungry Fox was walking about the forest looking for something to eat, but he ... find nothing. Then he came up to the lake. "There ... be some fish," he thought. "If I ... catch one I shall ... to have a good dinner." He saw a few fishes but they were swimming too fast. The Fox ... not swim. "How ... I catch them?" he thought and said, "Little fishes!" — "We ... not hear you." — "Come nearer, you ... come on land and live in peace as I do. You ... always find something to eat in the forest and you will ... to meet many friends." — "He ... be so stupid\* if he tells us to come on land," thought the fishes.

#### B. A White Winter Dress

The Little Hare\*\* was not happy: he was afraid of the Fox and the Bear.

In summer he ... hide in the grass. But he did not know how to get ready for winter. "I ... ask my friends, they ... help me," he thought.

So he went to the Partridge\*\*\* and said, "... you tell me, good bird, how you hide from the Fox in winter?"

\* stupid — *глупый*

\*\* hare — *заяц*

\*\*\* partridge — *куропатка*

And the Partridge answered: "When Autumn goes, she always leaves me a white costume. I put it on and the Fox ... not see me in the snow."

"You ... be a very brave bird," said the Hare. "But I'm afraid of Autumn."

Then the Hare met some other friends but no one ... help him, so he ... to go back to his tree and he slept under it.

In the morning he got up and saw that the forest was white! "What ... I do?" he thought and came to the water to drink. He saw a white hare there, as white as snow.

"Oh, who ... it be? It ... be another Hare! Oh, it's me, in a white dress."

## XII. Read and retell the stories:

### A. A Farmer and His Sons

An old farmer was very ill. He was not happy, because his sons were always quarrelling\*.

He decided to teach them a lesson before he died. He said to one of his sons, "Try to break this bundle of sticks\*\*". His son could not break the bundle. He asked all his other sons to do it, but they could not break the bundle.

"Now untie\*\*\* it and try to break one of the sticks." All the sons could do it easily. "You can see now," smiled the old farmer, "that you must stop quarrelling and help each other. Separated you are weak like the stick, united you will always be strong."

B. One day the Sun met the Wind and they argued\*\*\*\* who was stronger. They argued for a long time but could not

\* to quarrel — *сориться*

\*\* bundle of sticks — *связка прутьев*

\*\*\* to untie — *развязать*

\*\*\*\* to argue — *спорить*

come to an agreement. Suddenly they saw a man walking along the road. The man was wearing a coat. And the Sun said to the Wind, "If you can make him take his coat off you are stronger than I. But if I can make him take his coat off I'm stronger than you." The Wind started blowing. But the stronger he blew, the tighter the man wrapped his coat around him. Then the Sun started shining brightly and the man took off his coat at once.

*XIII. Use the right form of the verbs in brackets:*

**A. The Weather Forecast:**

The weather (to be) a thing that I can never understand. I (to remember) one summer day. We (to read) the weather forecast in the newspaper: "Heavy showers\* with thunderstorms\*\*."

We (to decide) to stay at home. We (to look) at the people who (to pass) our house and (to say), "They (to come) home quite wet."

At twelve o'clock it (to become) very hot. One of us (to say), "I'd like to know when those heavy showers and thunderstorms (to begin)?"

"Ah, they (to come) in the afternoon, you'll see," we (to say) to each other. But there (to be) no rain on that day.

The next morning we (to read), "The weather (to be) warm and fine, no rain."

We (to go) to the country. We (to want) to have a good rest. But it (to begin) to rain hard, and it (to rain) the whole day. We (to come) home quite wet, with colds and rheumatism all over us.

*(After Jerome K. Jerome)*

\* heavy showers — проливные дожди

\*\* thunderstorm — гроза

B. London, May 20

Dear Jane,

I can't say that I (to be) fine. I (to be) here in London for two months now. The weather (to be) nasty here. It (to rain) since morning. I (to think) it always (to rain) here in spring. Anyway, it (to rain) every Saturday and Sunday since we (to come) here two months ago. Besides it (to be) foggy and windy and we stay home almost every weekend. And I (to feel) unhappy and bored. Last Sunday the weather forecast (to promise) fine weather, and we (to plan) a sightseeing tour. But in the morning when I (to wake up) it (to start) pouring and it never (to stop). I (to hope) next Sunday (to be) fine and sunny and I (to be able) to see something of London. When I (to have) a chance to see the sights of London I (to write) a long letter to you.

Love,  
Tommy.

*XIV. Use prepositions or adverbs. Retell the texts.*

A. **The Seasons**

The year is divided ... four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and winter. ... spring Nature awakens ... her long winter sleep. The trees are filled ... new life, the earth is warmed ... the rays\* ... the sun and the weather gets gradually milder. The fields and the meadows are covered ... fresh green grass. The woods and the forests are filled ... the songs ... the birds. The sky is blue and cloudless. ... night millions ... stars shine ... the darkness.

When summer comes the weather gets still warmer and sometimes it's very hot. It's the farmer's busy season — he works ... his fields ... morning ... night. The grass must be cut and the hay\*\* must be laid, while the dry weather lasts.

\* rays — *лучи*

\*\* hay — *сено*



Sometimes the skies are overcast ... heavy clouds, there are storms ... thunder, lightning and hail\*.

Autumn brings ... it the harvest\*\* time, when the crops are gathered in and the fruit is picked ... the orchard. The days are shorter and the nights longer. The woods turn yellow and brown, leaves begin to fall ... the trees and the ground is covered ... them. The skies are grey and very often it rains.

When winter comes we have to spend more time indoors because out of doors it is cold. We may get fog, sleet and frost. Ponds, lakes, rivers and streams are frozen, and the roads are sometimes covered ... slippery ice or deep snow. The trees are bare. Bitter north winds have stripped them ... all their leaves.

**B.** In summer I went ... Scarborough. When I arrived there it was late afternoon. ... dinner I put ... my raincoat and went ... a walk. It was a dull day, the sky was covered ... clouds, and it was raining a little. The wind was very strong and it was difficult to walk, but I wanted some air. While I was walking slowly ... the quiet empty street I saw a stranger. He first passed me by, but then he stopped.

"Is that you, old man?" he shouted. "It's nice to see you! I was never so glad to see you ... my whole life!"

I turned ... . It was Jones.

"Why, what are you doing here? What's the matter?" I said. "And aren't you cold?" Jones was wearing flannel trousers and a thin shirt. "Why don't your go home?"

"I cannot," he answered. "I forgot the name ... the hotel where my wife and I stayed. Take me ... you and give me something to eat."

"Haven't you any money?" I asked.

"Not a penny. We got here ... York, my wife and I, ... about eleven. We left our things ... the station and went ... the hotel.

\* hail — град

\*\* harvest — урожай

I changed my clothes and went ... a walk. The sun was shining brightly and there was nothing ... the weather forecast about rain. But I forgot to take the address."

"Can you describe the street or the house?"

"No," he said sadly.

"Well, I'm sure that we'll find out where you live soon enough," I said. I took him ... my hotel and gave him some food. We then began telephoning all the hotels ... Scarborough. We did it so well that next afternoon Jones found both his hotel and his wife."

*(After Jerome K. Jerome)*

*XV. Translate into English:*

1. — Какая сегодня погода? — Идет снег, но сегодня не так холодно, как вчера. 2. Прошлым летом было меньше солнечных дней, чем в это лето. 3. Чем сильнее мороз, тем лучше я себя чувствую. 4. В такую холодную погоду купаться нельзя, можно простудиться. 5. Ты можешь говорить погромче? Мне не слышно. 6. Погода в Санкт-Петербурге неустойчивая. Когда выходишь на улицу, может быть тепло и солнечно, но надо всегда брать с собой зонтик. Через несколько минут может пойти дождь, и станет холодно. 7. Иногда в апреле бывает тепло, как летом. 8. Погода в Батуми была ужасная. Целыми днями поливало, как из ведра. Мы не купались в море и не загорали. Мне кажется, это самый влажный город на Черном море. 9. Нам надо возвращаться, скоро пойдет дождь. 10. Вам следует надеть более теплую одежду. Никогда нельзя знать наверняка, к вечеру может подуть холодный ветер. 11. Где более влажный климат — в Британии или в Японии? 12. Если не знаете, с чего начать разговор, можете поговорить о погоде. Это всегда удобно. 13. Можете не брать зонт, я взяла свой. 14. Осень была любимым временем года Пушкина. Его можно

понять, когда посетишь Михайловское осенью. Природа там прекраснейшая, особенно ранней осенью, пока листья еще не опали. 15. Мне здесь нравится, здесь всегда сухо и тепло, небо ясное, дождей может не быть все лето. Это лучшее время для проведения отпуска. 16. Вы не сможете устроиться в отеле, если не закажете комнаты. Вам следует сделать это заранее. 17. — Зонтик взять? — Не надо. Прогноз погоды говорит, что дождя не будет, но к вечеру погода может ухудшиться. 18. Отойди, пожалуйста, в сторону, мне ничего не видно. 19. Неужели это он? Этого не может быть!

*XVI. Read the story and answer the questions:*

### **The Indian and Two Travellers**

Two men were travelling in a very wild\* part of America. They saw no modern houses and no traces of civilization for many days. What they saw was only a few huts made of wood or tents where Indians lived. One day they met an old Indian who did not work but hunted animals and ate them as his food. He was very clever and knew everything about the forest and the animals living in it and many other things. He could also speak English quite well.

"Can you tell us what the weather will be like during the next few days?" one of the travellers asked him. "Oh, yes," he said. "Rain is coming and wind. Then there will be snow for a day or two but then the sunshine will come again and the weather will be fine." "These old Indians seem to know more about Nature than we with all our science\*\*," said the man to his friend. Then he turned to the old Indian.

"Tell me," he said, "how do you know all this?" the Indian answered, "I heard it on the radio."

\* wild — дикий

\*\* science ['saɪəns] — наука

## ◆ Questions:

1. Where were the two men travelling?
2. Who did they meet one day?
3. The Indian was very clever, wasn't he?
4. Did the Indian tell the two men the weather forecast?
5. How did he know it?

*XVII. Read the story and reproduce it:*

### A Rainy Day Episode

It had been raining hard the whole morning when I had to leave my house. I wanted to take an umbrella, but I saw that out of my five umbrellas there was not a single one which I could use. I decided to take all the five umbrellas and have them repaired\*. When I was going out, my wife asked me to bring her umbrella back.

"From 8 to 9 I shall be taking a walk," she said, "and I shall need it." I went to a repair shop.

"I want to have my umbrellas repaired," I said. "I shall call for them on my way home." At one o'clock in the afternoon I felt hungry and went to a restaurant, I sat down at a table and ordered lunch. A few minutes later young woman with an umbrella in her hand, came in and sat down at the same table.

After lunch I got up, took the woman's umbrella, and was about to leave the restaurant. I must tell you I am a very absent-minded man. "This is my umbrella," cried the woman.

"Excuse me," I said returning the umbrella to her. "I am awfully sorry."

In the evening on my way home, I called for the umbrellas which were ready by that time, and went to the nearest underground station. There I got into a carriage, put five umbrellas by my side and began to read a newspaper. Suddenly I heard a voice:

---

\* to have them repaired — *починить их*

3. Ask your friend where he likes to have his summer holidays and why.

4. Explain the English saying: "Other countries have a climate, in England we have weather."

5. Say if the weather forecast is reliable.

6. Say what the weather forecast for today was and make a forecast for tomorrow. Begin with: "I think it may..."

7. Write a letter to your friend or relative

a) from a rainy and dull place;

b) from a sunny and cheerful place.

8. Make up a weather forecast for the coming summer from the point of view of:

a) an optimist;

b) a pessimist.

#### XX. Poems and songs to enjoy:

1.                   The south wind brings wet weather,  
                      The north wind wet and cold together,  
                      The west wind always brings us rain,  
                      The east wind blows it back again.

2.                   When the weather is wet  
                      We must not fret,  
                      When the weather is cold  
                      We must not scold,  
                      When the weather is warm  
                      We must not storm -  
                      But be joyful together  
                      Whatever the weather.

3.                   Sing a song of seasons  
                      Something bright in all  
                      Flowers in the summer  
                      Fires in the fall.

"Oh, you have had a very successful day today, haven't you?" I looked up and was surprised to see the same young woman — my companion at lunch. She was looking at my umbrellas and smiling.

*XVIII. Read and reproduce the jokes:*

1. *Teacher:* Which is nearer to us, England or the moon?  
*Tommy:* The moon, sir.  
*Teacher:* The moon? Why do you think so?  
*Tommy:* Because we can see the moon, and we cannot see England.
  
2. *Nick:* Why is it so cold today?  
*Father:* It is winter now. It is always cold in winter.  
*Nick:* But why? Why is it cold in winter?  
*Father:* Oh, Nick, I didn't ask my father so many questions when I was a little boy.  
*Nick:* That is why you cannot answer my question.
  
3. "How old are you, sonny?" asked an old man of the little boy on the bench.  
 "Six," came the quick answer.  
 "Six," repeated the old man, "and yet you are not so tall as my umbrella."  
 The boy drew himself up to his full height.  
 "And how old is your umbrella, sir?"
  
4. — Granny, may I eat the whole cake?  
 — Yes, you may, if you can.

*XIX. Things to do:*

1. Speak about the climate of your area.
2. Say what kind of weather you prefer and what your favourite season is. Explain why.

4.

**Bed in Summer***(by R. L. Stevenson)*

In winter I get up at night  
 And dress by yellow candlelight.  
 In summer, quite the other way,  
 I have to go to bed by day.  
 I have to go to bed and see  
 The birds still hopping on the tree,  
 Or hear the grown-up people's feet  
 Still going past me in the street.  
 And does it not seem hard to you,  
 When all the sky is clear and blue,  
 And I should like so much to play,  
 To have to go to bed by day?

5.

The more we study, the more we know,  
 The more we know, the more we forget,  
 The more we forget, the less we know,  
 The less we know, the less we forget,  
 The less we forget, the more we know.  
 So why study?

6.

**The More We Get Together**

The more we get together, together, together,  
 The more we get together, the happier we'll be.  
 For your friends are my friends,  
 And my friends are your friends,  
 The more we get together, the happier we'll be.  
 Oh, how's for getting friendly, quite friendly, real friendly?  
 Oh, how's for getting friendly, both your friends and mine?  
 If your friends like my friends,  
 And my friends like your friends,  
 We'll all be friends together, now won't that be fine!

7.

**The Seasons**

Spring, summer, autumn and winter,  
 Spring, summer, autumn and winter.

What's the weather like today?  
Is it sunny?  
What's the weather like today?  
Is it raining?  
What's the weather like today?  
It's quite funny how it's changing.

What's the weather like today?  
Is it snowing?  
What's the weather like today?  
Is it clearing?  
What's the weather like today?  
Is it going to be really very nice indeed?

Shining sun and sparkling sea,  
Warm and dry with just a breeze  
Among the trees,  
Please.

Spring, summer, autumn and winter,  
Spring, summer, autumn and winter.

Yesterday the wind was blowing.  
Is today going to be fine?

Spring, summer, autumn and winter,  
Spring, summer, autumn and winter.





## UNIT X

### GOING OUT FOR THE EVENING

Grammar: The Past and the Future Perfect Tenses.  
Disjunctive Questions (разделительные вопросы).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I.	[ʊə]	II.	[jʊə]	III.	[aʊə]
	poor		cure		our
	moor		pure		flour
	spoor		fure		sour
	tour		secure		flower
	sure		endure		tower
IV.	[ʃn]	V.	[ʒn]	VI.	[dʒn]
	ocean		vision		legion
	vacation		division		region
	action		revision		pigeon
	reception		television		allegiance
	attraction		decision		surgeon
	production		occasion		Georgian

- VII. 1. Well, I'm sure.  
2. For sure.  
3. Curiosity is incurable.

- VIII. 1. I don't usually see visions.  
2. She made a sufficient impression on Sherry.  
3. Shirley made a substantial contribution.

- IX.** There was a young lady of station,  
 "I love men!" was her sole exclamation.  
 But when men cried, "You flatter!"  
 She replied, "Oh! no matter,  
 Isle of Man is the true explanation!"  
 (*Lewis Carroll*)

### Vocabulary

- movie** — кино (фильм)  
**movie house** — кинотеатр  
**to go to the cinema (pictures, movies)** — ходить в кино  
**cinema-goer** — любитель кино  
**show** — программа; представление; сеанс  
**plot** — сюжет  
**to be on** — идти (о фильме)  
**western** — вестерн (фильм о ковбоях)  
**horror film** — фильм ужасов  
**adventure film** — приключенческий фильм  
**extremely** — чрезвычайно  
**review** — обзор  
**to shoot (make) a film** — снимать фильм  
**performance** — постановка; исполнение  
**screen** — экран  
**amusing** — развлекательный  
**amusement** — развлечение  
**to entertain** — развлекать  
**boring** — скучный, нудный  
**to frighten** — пугать  
**to be interested in** — интересоваться чем-л.  
**to be impressed by** — получить впечатление  
**to miss** — пропускать  
**splendid** — великолепный  
**fascinating** — замечательный  
**to stay up late** — долго не ложиться спать  
**to afford** — позволять себе  
**to call for smb.** — зайти за кем-л.  
**particularly** — особенно  
**to switch on/off** — включить/выключить  
**straight play** — классическая пьеса  
**animated cartoons** — мультфильм  
**to broadcast** — передавать по радио (телевидению)  
**BBC** = British Broadcasting Corporation  
**to make up one's mind** — решить  
**director** — режиссер  
**playwright** — драматург  
**script** — сценарий  
**stage** — сцена

to stage a play — поставить пьесу      musical — мюзикл  
 to play the role of — играть роль кого-л.      ballet ['bæleɪ] — балет

### Texts

#### I. GOING OUT FOR THE EVENING

My wife and I go to the theatre whenever we can. But before we decide to buy tickets, we like to know something about the play. When a new play opens, we usually read the review in our newspaper to find out what the critic thinks. Last week a new comedy opened at the Hippodrome. The newspaper report said it was very amusing, so we decided to go on Saturday night.

My wife took a long time to make up her mind what to wear and we left our house a little late. By the time we got to the theatre, the first act had already begun. We were sorry we had missed part of the play, because the rest of it was very funny. The review in the newspaper had been right. It was an extremely entertaining comedy.

After the play was over, we met some friends we hadn't seen for a long time. They wanted to go to a night club. It had been many years since my wife and I went dancing but I finally agreed. By the time we got home, it was about two o'clock in the morning. I never stay out so late and I was extremely tired.

When I was younger, I hadn't got enough money to go out for an evening like that. Now I can afford it but I haven't got the energy to stay up so late.

#### II.

*Dorothy:* Paul, we haven't been out for over a month. Let's go somewhere this evening.

*Paul:* All right. Where would you like to go? Look in the paper and see what's on at the cinema.

*Dorothy:* I see that a new play opened this week.

*Paul:* It got very bad reviews. They said in the papers that it was the worst play of the year. You don't want to go and see that. What else can we do?

*Dorothy:* I'd enjoy a good concert, but according to the paper there isn't one tonight.

*Paul:* Aren't there any good films on?

*Dorothy:* How about "Waterloo Bridge"? That should be entertaining.

*Paul:* We've already seen it. It's an old picture. Don't you remember?

*Dorothy:* Well, there's a good love story at the Leicester Square Theatre.

*Paul:* You know I don't like love stories. What's on at the local cinema?

*Dorothy:* "Amusing Adventure," with Robert Roberts. It's a comedy.

*Paul:* Good. Let's go there. What time does the big picture start?

*Dorothy:* It started a quarter of an hour ago. We've just missed it.

*Paul:* Well, I suppose all we can do is stay at home and watch television.



What's on at the cinema?

*Dorothy:* I was afraid you'd say that. Now it will take me another month to get you interested again in going out.

What's on at the local cinema? — *Что идет в местном кинотеатре?*

How about going to the movies? — *Не пойти ли в кино?*

The acting was first-class. — *Игра была первоклассной.*

What's your opinion of the play? — *Каково твое мнение о пьесе?*

Is it worth seeing? — *Это стоит посмотреть?*

I don't mind the cinema. — *Я ничего не имею против кино.*

I can't stand TV. — *Я не выношу телевидение.*

I've been looking forward to it. — *Я с нетерпением ждал этого.*

### ☺☹ Dialogues

1. — I'm bored.  
 — Well... do something interesting.  
 — What, for example?  
 — Go to the cinema.  
 — It bores me.  
 — Always?  
 — Yes. All the films are so boring. I'm not interested in sex or violence\*.  
 — Well, what interests you then?  
 — Nothing!  
 — You need some fresh air!
  
2. — What are you doing tonight?  
 — I'm staying in. There's a good horror film on TV.  
 — What is it?  
 — "The Blood of Frankenstein."  
 — Oh, that sounds frightening.  
 — Not really... I think horror films are amusing.  
 — Amusing? Horror films?

\* violence — *насилие*



There's a good horror film on TV tonight.

— Yes, I went with Ann to see "Dracula" last week. I was very amused. I laughed from beginning to end.

— What about Ann?

— Oh, she was terrified. I hadn't expected she would be.

3. — Hello! Haven't seen you for ages. How are you?

— I'm fine, thank you! And what about you?

— Fine too! Has your dream come true?

— Yes, I'm an actress at a drama theatre, besides I sometimes play small roles in films.

— I'm happy for you.

— Thank you!

4. — Hello! Can I speak to Carol, please?

— Speaking. Hello, Jack!

— How about going to the movies tonight?

— Is there anything special on?

— No, nothing special, I just wanted to take you out.

You are staying indoors too much. Shall I book the tickets for the seven o'clock show?

— That would be fine. Will you call for me or shall we meet at the entrance?

— I'll call for you.

— Thank you, bye-bye.

— See you later.

5. — Well, what do you think of the film?  
— I enjoyed every minute of it. What about you?  
— I think it is splendid. I haven't laughed so much for a long time, though normally I don't very much like comedies.  
— Neither do I, but they have chosen the best actors for the film and that did it. Besides, the music is wonderful, don't you think so?  
— Yes, the music and the acting and the whole thing was first-class from beginning to end.
6. — Did you watch the musical yesterday?  
— Yes, I did. It's very different from what I had seen before.  
— The music was fascinating and the plot was thrilling, but frankly speaking I didn't like the acting.  
— On the contrary, what I liked most was the acting.
7. — Have you seen "Gone with the Wind"?  
— Yes, I have.  
— What's your opinion? Is it worth seeing?  
— It's one of the best movies I've ever seen. I was greatly impressed by it.
8. — Hello, Molly, it's Peter. Are you free tonight?  
— Peter? Yes, I am. Why?  
— Would you like to come to the cinema with me?  
— Oh, yes. I'd love to. What's on?  
— It's an old James Bond film.  
— Great! What time does it start?  
— It starts at 8.30. It's at the Odeon cinema.  
— What time shall we meet and where?  
— Let's meet outside the cinema just before 8.30.  
— All right, see you then. Thanks for the call. Bye.  
— Bye. See you later.



9. — Is there anything worth watching on the other channel?  
— I think it's a western.  
— Do you mind if we switch over?  
— Well, I rather wanted to see the football match.
10. — What's on BBC 2 at eight o'clock?  
— As far as I can remember there's a quiz programme.  
— Do you mind if I watch it?  
— No, I've been looking forward to it all evening.
11. — Did you see the play on television last night?  
— No, I didn't. What was it?  
— "Romeo and Juliet." I cried.  
— Cried? Why?  
— Well, it was very sad. At the end, Romeo killed himself and then Juliet killed herself.  
— It sounds silly\* to me. Why did they kill themselves?  
— ... for love!  
— Oh, they were silly, weren't they? I wouldn't kill myself for love.  
— No, you wouldn't, I know.
12. *Mother:* Where've you been?  
*Son:* Pictures.  
*Mother:* By yourself?  
*Son:* No, with Robert Smith.  
*Mother:* Robert Smith? I don't think I know him, do I?  
*Son:* I used to go to school with him\*\*.  
*Father:* I don't know why you pay good money to go to the pictures when you can see them at home for nothing.  
*Son:* It's more interesting. Wide screen... bigger... You can exchange impressions with your friends.

---

\* It sounds silly. — *Это звучит глупо.*

\*\* I used to go to school with him. — *Мы вместе учились в школе.*

*II. Make up sentences:***Model: I prefer comedies.**

like	thrillers
don't like	adventure films
enjoy	musicals
dislike	classical ballet
prefer	folk music
hate	documentaries
am fond of	sports news
am interested in	entertaining show
don't care for	operas
	animated cartoons
	disco music
	straight plays
	horror films

*III. Use the right words:*

tickets; play; film; to book; amusing; pop singer; prefer; horror films; actor; boring; was over; show; enjoyed; musical; superb; opinion; make up my mind.

1. What ... is on at the local cinema? Let's book ... in advance. The ... is new and very ... . 3. Elvis Presley is a famous American ... , he had a lot of fans all over the world. 4. What kind of films do you ... ? — I like ... . 5. What's your ... about the play? — Oh, I ... it from beginning to end. 6. Who is your favourite ... ? — Laurence Olivier. His acting is ... . 7. Did you like the TV programme yesterday? — No, it was so ... . 8. "My Fair Lady" is a very popular ... . 9. I can't ... where to go out tonight. — Let's go to the local club. 10. After the show ... we switched off the TV set. 11. I'd like ... two seats for tomorrow. 12. Can I still get tickets for tonight's ... ?

*Father:* But they are pictures just the same, aren't they?

*Son:* I don't think so.

13. The Brown family are at home early on Saturday evening.

*Father:* For once we're going to spend Saturday evening together as a family. So what are we going to do?

*Mother:* I'd love to see "The School for Scandal" at the local theatre. I love plays.

*1st daughter:* I don't. I don't like them at all, I like the cinema, particularly comedies, I'd like to see a new comedy.

*Son:* Well, I don't mind the cinema but I prefer television. Why don't we just go out for a drink? And after that I wouldn't mind watching the late night film.

*All:* Oh, really! Trust you!

*2nd daughter:* Well, I can't stand TV. I'd rather go to a folk club. Let's go to the club. It's great.

*All:* Oh, no! I'm not going to that place again. It's awful.

### Exercises

*I. Combine the following words using the model:*

**Model:** "Tarsan" is an interesting film.

"The Pilgrim"	interesting	musical
"Romeo and Juliet"	famous	comedy
"Pigmalion"	popular	play
"Dracula"	wonderful	opera
"Nobody Wanted to Die"	great	ballet
"The Swan Lake"	classical	film
"The Snow Maiden"	rock	thriller
"Gone with the Wind"	horror	drama
"My Fair Lady"	fascinating	animated
"Jesus Christ — Super Star"	splendid	cartoons
"Mickey Mouse"		

*IV. Make a conversation using the questions on the left side and the answers on the right side:*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. How about going to the puppet theatre* tonight?</li> <li>2. Why not see that comedy for a change?</li> <li>3. Would you like to see "The Three Sisters" by Chekhov?</li> <li>4. What about seeing "Pigmalion" tomorrow?</li> <li>5. Have you got anything special tonight?</li> <li>6. I've got two tickets for "Hamlet." What about going there together?</li> <li>7. We'll meet at 7. Is it all right with you?</li> <li>8. What would you say to staying at home and watching a new TV show?</li> <li>9. Would you mind if we go and see "Spartacus" at the Bolshoi Theatre?</li> <li>10. We've got an extra ticket** for "An Ideal Husband." Will you come with us?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. I'd be delighted.</li> <li>2. That would suit me very well.</li> <li>3. I'd love to, but I can't.</li> <li>4. Perfectly. Let's make it 7.</li> <li>5. With pleasure.</li> <li>6. No, nothing special. Why?</li> <li>7. That's a splendid idea!</li> <li>8. I'm afraid, I can't.</li> <li>9. Thank you. I don't want to.</li> <li>10. That's great!</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

\* puppet theatre — кукольный театр

\*\* extra ticket — лишний билет

## V. 1) Give information about the film(s) you have chosen:

the title of the film	the type of the film	the name of the cinema	time of the show	the leading actors
The Purple Rose of Cairo		Odeon		
Spartacus				Laurence Olivier
Agent 007				
I Spy			6 p.m.	
Pale Rider	comedy			
Fantomas				
War and Peace				
It Isn't Easy to Be a Teenager				
I Loved You, Lou, Too Much				
Mickey Mouse				
Romeo and Juliet				
Ten Little Niggers				

2) Advertise the film you have chosen.

3) Telephone your friend and invite him/her to see the film you have chosen.

## VI. Answer the questions:

- How many hours a day do you watch TV?
- What do you usually do while watching TV?
- What programmes do you watch regularly?
- What is your favourite programme?
- Do you switch off the TV set if the programme is not interesting to you?
- Can you give up your work about the house if your favourite programme is on?
- Do you switch to another channel if some of your family members watch the programme?
- Are you a great cinema-goer?

9. What types of films do you prefer?
10. When did you go to the theatre last? Do you remember what was on? What leading actors played in the performance?
11. What kind of music are you fond of?
12. What is your favourite radio programme?

*VII. Read the following questions and answer them:*

**A.**

1. She is wonderful in this film, isn't she?
2. You are a film star, aren't you?
3. You will be busy tonight, won't you?
4. He can play this role well, can't he?
5. You watch TV in the evenings, don't you?
6. There's a new comedy on in the Forum, isn't there?
7. She has played in hundreds of films, hasn't she?
8. They booked the tickets in advance, didn't they?

**B.**

1. He is not a comic actor, is he?
2. You don't like symphony music, do you?
3. She didn't dance yesterday, did she?
4. There was nothing worth seeing on TV, was there?
5. There are no tickets for this show, are there?
6. He hasn't seen this picture, has he?
7. You are not going to see this horror film at night, are you?
8. She won't be able to go out with us, will she?

*VIII. Add question tags and answer the questions:*

**Model:** You are Mr. Brown, ... ?

You are Mr. Brown, aren't you? — Yes, I am.

**Interview**

You are Gloria Moon, ... ?

You live in Hollywood, ... ?

- And you have lived there all your life, ... ?  
 You aren't a producer, ... ?  
 You are a film star, ... ?  
 You didn't go to University, ... ?  
 You started work when you were 17, ... ?  
 You worked as a model, ... ?  
 You can't play any musical instrument, ... ?  
 But you can sing and dance, ... ?  
 You've been to France, ... ?  
 But you don't know French, ... ?  
 You have your own villa on the sea coast, ... ?  
 You are married, ... ?  
 You have no children, ... ?  
 You'd like to take part in our film, ... ?

*IX. Make up sentences in the right column using: A. Past Perfect; B. Future Perfect.*

**A.**

**Model:** I came home at 2.

I had come home by 2.

The concert began	at 5	by 5
The rain stopped	at that time	by that time
She read the play	in the evening	by the evening
They finished the article	on the 1st of March	by the 1st of March
The weather changed	on Monday	by Monday
The family discussed the new TV show	when I came home	by the time I came home
I picked the cases	when the taxi arrived	by the time the taxi arrived

## B.

<b>Model: I shall finish</b> the work at 3.		<b>I shall have finished</b> the work by 3.
The concert will finish	at 5	by 5
I hope the rain will stop	in the evening	by the evening
The actors will discuss the play	on the 1st of March	by the 1st of March
We shall read the article	on Monday	by Monday
They will have dinner	when I come home	by the time I come home
She will leave	when the taxi arrives	by the time the taxi arrives

*X. Open the brackets using: A. Past Perfect; B. Future Perfect.*

A. 1. She hoped that I (to pay for the tickets already). 2. When we came the performance (to begin). 3. He went to bed as soon as he (to switch off the TV set). 4. By the end of the year she (to play in two films). 5. When they came home the football match (to finish). 6. By the time the director arrived the actress (to learn her part). 7. She went for a holiday after she (to pass the exam). 8. I didn't know what to do when I (to spend all the money). 9. He didn't start eating before he (to wash his hands). 10. He understood the book only after he (to read it again).

B. 1. When the uncle returns from Australia his son (to grow up). 2. By the end of this year I (to learn English very well). 3. I'll need this magazine. Will you (to look through it by morning)? 4. If you come at 9 the concert (to finish). 5. We mustn't be late. They (to eat everything) by the time we come. 6. Before they choose a suitable house they (to see hundreds of



them). 7. When you go out it (to stop raining). 8. By the end of May she (to pass all the exams).

*XI. Complete the following sentences according to the model:*

**Model:** It was cold in the room (the window/be open/for a long time). —

It was cold in the room because the window **had been** open for a long time.

1. She didn't know the way there (she/never/be there). 2. I did not know her address (she/move/to a new flat). 3. They were upset (they/fail/at the exams). 4. She was happy (she/play/the leading role/in a new movie). 5. He rang me up (I/ask/him/to do it). 6. The cake was too sweet (she/put/a lot of sugar/into it). 7. She felt tired (she/work hard/the day before). 8. I didn't see Fred (I/leave/earlier). 9. Kate didn't want to go to the cinema (she/see/the film/before). 10. I didn't listen to that play on the radio (I/hear/it). 11. I couldn't get into my flat at once (I/lose/the key).

*XII. Finish the following according to the model:*

**Model:** I received a letter from him yesterday. (for a long time) —

I hadn't received letters from him for a long time.

1. I was in the Bolshoi yesterday. (for many years) 2. I saw Peter last night. (since we finished school) 3. I watched a thriller on TV yesterday. (since the time I was young) 4. I laughed so much watching the comedy. (for a long time) 5. There was an interesting film on at our local cinema last week. (for many months) 6. We went to a wonderful pop concert last Saturday. (since we were students)

*XIII. Read the dialogue and compare the use of the Past Indefinite and the Past Perfect Tenses. Make up a dialogue of the same kind.*

*Mary:* Why did you go home before the party had finished?

*John:* I had forgotten to switch off my TV set.

*Mary:* What had happened when you got home?

*John:* My brother had switched it off for me.

*Mary:* Then why didn't you come back to the party?

*John:* Oh, I had left the TV on deliberately (намеренно) because I didn't want to stay at the party.

*XIV. Use the right form of the verbs in brackets. Retell the story.*

### Why Was She Angry?

A young man (to be) in love with a beautiful girl. One day when they (to walk) in the park near the girl's house, she (to say) to him, "Tomorrow is my birthday, will you come and have dinner with me?"

"Of course, I shall," (to say) the young man, "and I'll send you red roses, one rose for each year of your life."

The same evening the young man (to go) to a florist's. As the girl (to be) twenty years old, he (to pay) for twenty roses and (to ask) the florist to send them to the girl's house the next day.

He (to leave) her address and a letter full of love.

The florist (to know) the young man very well because he often (to buy) flowers in his shop. The florist (to think), "The young man is a good customer, my price for the roses (to be) too high, I'll send thirty roses instead of twenty." And he (to do) so. In the afternoon when the young man (to come) to see his girlfriend, she (not to want) to speak to him. He (to be) very unhappy and (to go) back home. But he never (to know) why she (to be) so angry with him\*.

*XV. 1) Read the text:*

One afternoon some friends rang up Susan and Derek to invite them out for the evening. They had not seen each other

\* to be angry with smb. — сердиться на кого-л.

for a long time, but Susan had bought tickets to the theatre that evening. They wanted to see the play very much, because several people had recommended it to them. Also, it had been very difficult to get tickets. In fact, they had only been able to get these because someone else had returned them. They had not arranged anything else for the evening, however, so they agreed to meet their friends for a drink before the theatre.

They all met early in the evening and talked for an hour. When Susan got up, she found that her handbag had disappeared. They told the manager what had happened. He was very upset and said that nothing like that had happened for a long time. He went off to have a look around, but nobody had seen the thief\*. No one had handed the bag in either.

Susan was upset because there had been quite a lot of money in it. They decided to go to the theatre and forget about it for a few hours. They hoped that the thief had just taken the money out and thrown the bag away. If someone had found it, it could not be at the police station yet.

Suddenly Susan remembered that the theatre tickets had been in the bag too. She had meant to give them to Derek, but had forgotten. By this time the play had already started, so they decided it was not worth going to the theatre. They went for a meal with their friends and later went to the nearest police station. To their surprise Susan's bag was there with everything in it! A child had picked it up\*\*, the parents had discovered what had happened and had handed it in immediately.

They went straight to the theatre and, with the money they thought they had lost, bought four expensive seats — for three months later!

## 2) Answer the questions:

1. Why did Susan and Derek want to see the play?

\* thief [θɪf] — вор

\*\* to pick up — подобрать

2. How did they get tickets?
3. What did Susan find when she got up?
4. Why was Susan upset?
5. Why didn't they go to the theatre that night?
6. Why did they buy very expensive tickets?

*XVI. Use prepositions or adverbs. Retell the story.*

My girlfriend and I are fond ... comedies. There was an interesting film ... , so we decided to go ... the movies ... Saturday. We agreed to meet ... the entrance ... the cinema ... a quarter ... 6.

It was very cold and windy, as it often happens ... winter. I was waiting ... my girlfriend ... a long time. ... last I went inside and looked ... the pictures ... the famous actors ... the walls. ... 6 o'clock the film began but my girlfriend had not come. I remember that the film was ... a bull-fighter. I was not interested ... the plot ... the film and I soon got tired ... it. Besides I was thinking ... my girlfriend. "Why didn't she come ... time? Was she late ... the show? Or has anything happened ... her?" ... these thoughts ... my head I left the cinema.

The next day I stayed ... bed because I was ill. ... the evening I found ... that my girlfriend was ill too, for she had been waiting ... me ... the entrance ... another cinema, which is ... the street.

*XVII. Translate into English:*

1. Фильм оказался намного увлекательнее, чем о нем писали критики. 2. Я не интересуюсь фильмами ужасов, даже если они увлекательные, но о вкусах ведь не спорят. 3. Он не пропускает ни одного детективного романа по телевидению. 4. Это была такая смешная комедия. Мы смеялись весь спектакль. Я никогда так не смеялся. 5. Наконец ее мечта осуществилась, она посмотрела «Лебединое озеро» в Большом театре. И музыка и

исполнение произвели на нее огромное впечатление. Она давно мечтала побывать в Большом театре. 6. Если мы не возьмем такси, к тому времени, когда мы приедем, спектакль уже закончится. 7. Пьеса была такая скучная. Мы ушли из театра, когда она еще не кончилась. 8. Привет, Хейли! Почему ты вчера не пришла? Мы же договаривались пойти в кино на последний сеанс. 9. Мы смогли достать билеты только потому, что кто-то от них отказался. 10. По дороге домой он вспомнил, что оставил билеты дома. 11. — Что идет в ближайшем кинотеатре? — Какой-то боевик. Я думаю, не стоит смотреть. 12. Пьесу Бернарда Шоу «Пигмалион» ставят в большинстве театров мира. 13. Я видел эту пьесу несколько раз, но с каждым разом она восхищает меня все больше. 14. Жаль, что мы не выключили телевизор раньше, чем кончилась передача. 15. Управляющий был очень расстроен, так как ничего подобного никогда не случалось. 16. Чарли Чаплин стал популярен, только когда уехал в Америку снимать фильм, не так ли? 17. Многим певцам приходилось петь в кафе, ресторанах и клубах, прежде чем они стали популярными звездами. 18. Вы согласны, что телевидение занимает большую часть нашего времени?

*XVIII. Read the story and answer the questions:*

When Elvis Presley died in August 1977, radio and television programmes all over the world gave the news of his death. Mass media\* said that he had changed the face of American popular culture. They showed his films on TV and played his records\*\* on the radio.

He was born in 1935 in Mississippi. He never had any music lessons because the family was poor, but he sang at church services.

\* mass media — средства массовой информации

\*\* a record — пластинка; to record — записывать на пластинку

In the summer of 1953 Elvis recorded two songs for his mother's birthday at 4 dollars. Then he made five more records. And in 1955 he met Tom Parker who became his manager and with whom he made dozens of records. They were all big hits. He was the first rock singer.

In 1956 he made his first film in Hollywood. Then Elvis served in the army. In 1966 he got married, and had not performed live\* until 1968. By that time many people had become tired of him. Anyway, in 1988 he appeared in a special television programme and became popular again. He is still popular all over the world.

#### ◆ Questions:

1. Where and when was Elvis Presley born?
2. How old was he when he became popular?
3. Did he get any musical education?
4. When did he meet his manager?
5. Was he married?
6. Why has Presley always been popular?
7. Do you know any songs of Elvis Presley?

#### XIX. Read and retell the story:

##### The Little Tramp\*\*

There were two cinemas in the town. In one there was a film which had cost millions of dollars. The actors were handsome, the actresses beautiful. The film had won a prize\*\*\* for its use of colour. The songs were sung by some of the best known singers in the world. The cinema was nearly empty.

A few streets away in the other cinema there was a very different film. It was over fifty years old. It was black and white

\* to perform live — (зд.) *выступать перед зрителями*

\*\* tramp — *бродяга*

\*\*\* to win (won [wʌn], won) a prize — *выиграть приз*

and there was no sound\*. The hero of the film was a tramp, whose hat and coat were too small. His trousers and shoes were too big. He was a little man with a funny walk. In his hand he carried a walking stick. The cinema was full. There were roars of laughter each time the little tramp escaped from a difficult situation. And when things went badly many cried.

I'm sure you have already recognized the "little tramp" — Charlie Chaplin. He has been making us laugh ever since his first film in 1914. The tramp is kind, always ready to help, dreaming of the girl that he secretly loves. All the time he has to struggle against those who are stronger and nastier — against a society which does not accept him. But nothing and nobody can keep him down — he always wins in the end.

Charlie Chaplin learned what it was to be small and poor in his early life. He was born in 1889 in a poor area of London. His parents were both stage actors. They separated and Charlie's mother had to struggle hard to support him and his brother. Once her voice broke when she was singing and Charlie, who was five years old, had to take her place. He copied her songs so well that the audience threw money on the stage. This was the beginning. The real success\*\* only came when Charlie went to America to make films.

Today "the little fellow" is known all over the world. His old silent films\*\*\* are shown again and again in cinemas and on television.



\* sound — звук; sound film — звуковой фильм

\*\* success [sək'ses] — успех

\*\*\* silent film — немой фильм

XX. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Begin your statements with:

1) I agree (disagree) that...

I don't agree that...

2) It's quite true that...

3) You are absolutely right...

4) I don't think so, ...

1. Television takes most of our time.
2. Educational programmes are necessary.
3. Cinema and theatre are not popular because of TV.
4. Thrillers and horror films are bad for children.
5. "The News" programme is most popular with young people.
6. TV advertisements are very interesting.
7. Radio is not so popular as TV now.
8. TV is terribly bad for people's eyes.
9. Our TV programmes have become much more interesting now.



Radio is not so popular as TV now.



## XXI. Read the story:

## A Day Off Work

Last Wednesday morning Bill rang Mr. Thomson, his boss, at the office and said that he was not well. "All right," said his boss. "You may stay in bed today if you are not well." Mr. Thomson liked Bill very much. At lunch time he bought some fruit and took it to Bill. Bill thanked him and said he would be able to come the next day.

At 3 o'clock in the afternoon Mr. Thomson locked his office door and switched on his portable TV set. He wanted to watch an important international football match. It was England against Brazil. Both teams\* were playing well. It was very exciting. At 3.20 England scored a goal\*\*. Mr. Thomson jumped out of his chair. He was very excited. He was smiling happily. When suddenly the cameraman focused on the crowd, Mr. Thomson stopped smiling and looked very angry. Bill's face was there on the screen. He didn't look ill at all.

1). Describe the next morning at the office. Use the words: to praise (хвалить), to punish (наказывать), to fire (уволить), to shout at (кричать на), to discuss.



He doesn't look ill at all.

\* team [ti:m] — команда

\*\* to score a goal — забить гол

2). Make a dialogue between Bill and Mr. Thomson the next morning.

*XXII. Read and retell the following jokes:*

1. At a dinner in Hollywood to celebrate his birthday, Charlie Chaplin entertained the guests throughout the evening by imitating people he knew. Finally he sang at the top of his voice an aria from an Italian opera — sang it superbly. “Why, Charlie, I never knew you could sing so beautifully!” someone exclaimed. “I can’t sing at all,” Chaplin replied. “I was only imitating Caruso.”

2. A lady was late for the concert. When she came the concert had begun. She entered the hall and found her seat. The orchestra was playing some music. She had listened for a while before she asked her neighbour, “What are they playing?” “The ninth symphony,” he answered. “Oh, dear! I have missed the first eight!” exclaimed the lady.

3. *Teacher:* Has any of you read any plays by Shakespeare?  
*Pupil:* I have. I’ve read two plays. They are “Romeo” and “Juliet.”

4. *Teacher:* Who can say a few words about Robinson Crusoe?

*Pupil:* I can. Robinson Caruso was a great singer who lived on an island.

### 5. **There Are Such Polyglots**

He had learned so many languages that he could speak his mother tongue\* only with the help of one of them.

---

\* mother tongue [тa] — родной язык

## 6. Well-Known English Name

An author had called on a publisher\* to ask about his manuscript. "It's not bad at all," said the publisher, "but we only publish books written by writers with well-known names." "Wonderful," exclaimed the author. "My name is Smith."

### XXII. Things to do:

1. Speak of the film (play) you've recently seen.
2. Say if you agree with the following statement: "An actor is a man who tries to be everything but himself."
3. Read the review and write your own review of a film you've seen lately:

"'Monster of the Deep.' Produced by Auton Wells.

Directed by Stephen Slovanski. Written by Harvey Foster.  
Music composed by Oliver Laurence.

'Monster of the Deep,' which is now on at the Odeon, is one of the most exciting films I've ever seen. It was made in Hollywood last year, but they filmed the sharks\*\* on location off the coast of Florida. Steve Newman is brilliant as the shark hunter, but the real stars are the sharks themselves. It's a real thriller! Don't miss it!"

4. Tomorrow you are staying home the whole day. You want to watch TV. Make up a TV programme for the whole day.
5. Interview a famous producer, film star, pop singer, etc.
6. Write a biography of your favourite pop singer (actor, actress, TV reporter, etc.).
7. Make up a plot for a comedy (tragedy, thriller, love story, etc.).
8. Read the survey and ask your groupmates how they spend their free time.

\* publisher — *издатель*; to publish — *издавать, публиковать*

\*\* shark — *акула*

### Disco? TV? Books? Movies?

How do young people spend their free time? What leisure\* activities do they prefer? The sociological study shows that 13% of St. Petersburg's students have not been to the theatre once during the year; 33.5% have not seen an opera or ballet; 41.4% ignore concerts of classical music; 33.2% do not go to the museums or exhibitions; and less than half of the young people are interested in books. They prefer going to cafés and clubs instead of reading.

9. Guess\*\* the thriller by the key verbs or make up your own thriller:

lived	went	asked	disappeared
went	saw	answered	came back
caught	asked	came home	saw
asked	promised	saw	
promised	returned	wasn't happy	
let go	told	was surprised	
came back	sent	went	
told	went	said	
got angry	appeared	didn't say	

### XXIII. Poems and songs to enjoy:

1.

#### A Different Language

I met a little girl  
 Who came from another land.  
 I couldn't speak her language  
 But I took her by the hand.  
 We danced together,  
 Had such fun,  
 Dancing is a language  
 You can speak with anyone.

(By Edith Segal)

\* leisure ['leɪʒə] — досуг

\*\* to guess [ges] — догадаться

2.

**Six Serving Men**

I have six honest serving men -  
They taught me all I knew.  
Their names are "what" and "why" and "when"  
And "how" and "where" and "who."

I send them over land and sea,  
I send them East and West;  
But after they have worked for me,  
I give them all a rest.

I let them rest from nine till five,  
For I am busy then,  
As well as breakfast, lunch and tea  
For they are hungry men.

But different folk have different views;  
I know a person small,  
She keeps ten million serving men,  
Who get no rest at all!

She sends them on her own affairs,  
From the second she opens her eyes -  
One million "hows," ten million "wheres,"  
And seven million "whys"!

*(By R. Kipling)*

3.

**Song for a Rainy Sunday**

It's a rainy Sunday morning, and I don't know what to do.  
If I stay in bed all day, I'll only think about you,  
If I try to study, I won't learn anything new  
And if I go for a walk on my own in the park  
I'll probably catch the flu!

I just don't know (He doesn't know)  
What to do (What to do).

I just don't know (He doesn't know)  
What to do (What to do).

The rain has stopped and I'd like to go out,  
But I don't know where to go.

If I invite you out for a drink, you'll probably say no,  
If I go to the theatre alone, I won't enjoy the show.  
And if I stay here at home on my own, I'll be bored and miserable so.

I just don't know (He doesn't know)  
Where to go (Where to go).  
I just don't know (He doesn't know)  
Where to go (Where to go).

I'm going to the theatre but I don't know what to wear,  
I know if I look through my socks I'll never find a pair.  
If I put on my new green boots people will probably stare,  
And if my tie isn't straight and they complain 'cause I'm late  
I'll say, "Listen, mate: I don't care."

I just don't care (He doesn't care)  
What I wear (Life isn't fair).  
I just don't care (He doesn't care)  
What I wear (Life isn't fair).

## UNIT XI

### GREAT BRITAIN. LONDON

**Grammar:** Passive Voice (The Indefinite Tenses)  
(страдательный залог).  
The Article (артикуль).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

- |            |   |            |             |             |            |
|------------|---|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>I.</i>  | [əʃ]  | <i>II.</i> | [bl]        | <i>III.</i> | [tʃə]      |
|            | famous  |            | possible    |             | picture    |
|            | nervous   |            | visible     |             | culture    |
|            | furious   |            | portable    |             | nature     |
|            | humorous  |            | probable    |             | structure  |
|            | tremendous  |            | suitable    |             | sculpture  |
|            | anonymous   |            | fashionable |             | lecture    |
| <i>IV.</i> | 1. mb-[m]   | 2. bt-[t]  | 3. mn-[m]   | <i>V.</i>   | Silent "h" |
|            | bomb  | debt       | column      |             | hour       |
|            | climb   | doubt      | autumn      |             | honest     |
|            | dumb  | subtle     | solemn      |             | honour     |
|            | comb  |            |             |             |            |
|            | lamb  |            |             |             |            |
|            | heir  |            |             |             |            |
| <i>VI.</i> | 1. Mary had a little lamb who liked to climb the hills. |            |             |             |            |
|            | 2. No doubt, he has debts.                              |            |             |             |            |
|            | 3. Here are two pictures which are a match.             |            |             |             |            |

4. The child's features are my own.
5. Why worry?
6. Whatever will we do?
7. What a fashionable picture!
8. When is he going to deliver his famous lecture?

VII. There once lived two beautiful creatures  
 Who had most unusual features.  
 Their features were so much alike  
 That their parents and boyfriends alike  
 Couldn't tell they were different creatures.

### U Vocabulary

country — страна  
 state — государство; штат  
 kingdom — королевство  
 to be situated — быть  
 расположенным  
 to be made up of (= to consist of) —  
 состоять из  
 to separate — разделять  
 Dutch — голландский  
 monarch — монарх  
 monarchy — монархия  
 king — король  
 queen — королева  
 to surprise — удивлять  
 to be surprised — удивляться  
 commercial — торговый  
 the House of Lords — Палата  
 лордов  
 the House of Commons — Палата  
 общин  
 to limit — ограничивать  
 to appoint — назначать  
 to elect — выбирать  
 member — член

to connect — соединять  
 to govern [gʌvɪn] — управлять  
 government — правительство  
 leader — лидер; руководитель  
 power — власть  
 the party in power (the ruling party) —  
 правящая партия  
 law [lɔ:] — закон  
 to make laws — издавать законы  
 all over the world — во всем мире  
 sight (= place of interest) — досто-  
 примечательность  
 to see the sights (= to go sightsee-  
 ing) — осматривать достоприме-  
 чательности  
 tour [tuə] — путешествие  
 in memory of — в память о  
 tower [taʊə] — башня  
 crown [kraʊn] — корона  
 to crown — короновать  
 to bury ['beri] — хоронить  
 area ['teəriə] — территория  
 royal — королевский  
 prison — тюрьма



architect ['ɑ:kitekt] — архитектор to be famous for — славиться чем-л.  
 architecture ['ɑ:kitektʃə] — архитектура to be different from — отличаться от  
 to be famous as — быть известным to take one's time — не торопиться  
 как

### Texts

#### I.

### GREAT BRITAIN

Great Britain is situated to the northwest of Europe on the British Isles. It is made up of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. The official name of the country is the United Kingdom (UK). Great Britain is separated from the Continent by the English Channel and is connected with many countries by sea.

The climate of Britain is mild and warm because of the warm Gulf Stream. Most of the mountains are in the north, in Scotland, but they are not very high. Scotland is also famous for its beautiful lakes. The rivers in Great Britain are not long but many of them are deep. The longest rivers are the Clyde and the Thames.

London, the capital of the country, is situated on the Thames. The most important industrial cities are Manchester, Leeds, Bristol, Edinburgh, Birmingham and others. Cambridge and Oxford are famous university cities.

The UK is a constitutional monarchy. The official head of the state is the king or the queen. But the power of the monarch is limited by Parliament which is made up of the House of Lords and the House of Commons. Members of the House of Lords are appointed, and members of the House of Commons are elected by the people. Parliament makes laws. The head of the Government is the Prime Minister, who is the leader of the party in power. At present there are four main political parties in Great Britain: the Conservative, the Labour, the Liberal and the Social-Democratic Party.

The official language of Great Britain is English. It is now spoken in many countries of the world: the USA, Australia, New Zealand, Canada, India and others.

## II.

## LONDON

Let us go sightseeing in London and visit the principal places of interest. We'll start our tour from Trafalgar Square, which is the geographical centre of London. Trafalgar Square is also a historical place. In the middle of it is the famous Nelson Column, which was built in memory of Admiral Nelson's victory at Trafalgar. Here, there is also the National gallery with its wonderful collection of works from the British, French, Dutch, Italian and Spanish schools. Now we go down Whitehall, and turn to the right to a quiet street. This is the famous Downing Street and house No.10 is the residence of the Prime Minister of Great Britain.

And now we are in Westminster. It is the most important part of London. Here you see the Houses of Parliament. It is a beautiful building with two towers: the Clock Tower with Big Ben and the Victoria Tower with the national flag over it. Opposite the Houses of Parliament is Westminster Abbey. Many English kings and queens were crowned and are buried there.

Another interesting sight in the West End\* is Hyde Park. It is the largest of London parks and is famous for its Speakers' Corner which attracts a lot of tourists. The West End is full of museums, art galleries, the best theatres, cinemas, expensive clubs and shops.

Now we take a bus and go to the City, which is a small area but is the business and commercial heart of London. Very few people live there. All the main banks and offices are situated in the City. In the centre of the City there is the Tower of London and St. Paul's Cathedral. The Tower has a very long history. It

---

\* London consists of the three major parts: the West End, the City and the East End.

used to be a fortress\*, a royal residence, then a prison, and now it is a museum.

A visit to London is full of surprises. If you are in Piccadilly Circus you can meet very strange-looking young people wearing all kinds of fancy clothes, speaking different languages.

She's an exception. — *Она — исключение.*

Do you think it is possible to see everything? — *Вы считаете, что можно посмотреть все?*

I just want to take a glimpse. — *Я хочу только взглянуть.*

I hope I'll have a general idea of what London is. — *Я надеюсь, что получу общее представление о Лондоне.*

How do you like it here? — *Как вам здесь нравится?*

The House of Parliament — *здание парламента (палаты парламента)*

The Commonwealth — *Содружество (межгосударственное объединение Великобритании и большинства бывших английских доминионов, колоний и зависимых территорий)*

### ☺⊗ Dialogues

1. *Elizabeth:* Hi, Edward! I know you're going to England for your vacation.

*Edward:* Yes, I am, I've always wanted to go there. We shall visit England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland.

*Elizabeth:* You think you will be able to see all these within a month?

*Edward:* I hope so.

*Elizabeth:* Only Americans would ever think of leaving a holiday like that. Now, we English like to take our time.

*Edward:* Since when? Remember that aunt of yours who came over and who saw everything from the Empire State Building to Disneyland, and from the Grand Canyon to Niagara Falls in about ten days?

*Elizabeth:* She's an exception.

\* It used to be a fortress. — *Он когда-то был крепостью.*

Sir Christopher Wren, the architect, (to spend) most of his life in London. He (to design) many beautiful churches, including St. Paul's Cathedral. Some palaces and fine homes (to design) also by him.

Music (to represent) by a very interesting figure. This (to be) George Frederick Hendel. He (to come) to London from Hanover in 1710. Among other things he (to compose) "The Music for the Royal Fireworks" which (to write) to celebrate the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle\* in 1749. Like Chaucer and many other great artists, Hendel (to bury) in Westminster Abbey.

Another famous London figure (to be) one of England's greatest seamen, Admiral Nelson. He (to have) a very special memorial in Trafalgar Square. The monument (to consist) of a very tall column. On top of it (to stand) a figure of Nelson. It (to call) the Nelson Column. Equally famous (to be) the general under whose command the army at the battle of Waterloo in 1815 (to lead). This (to be) the Duke of Wellington. His house (to stand) at Hyde Park Corner. It sometimes (to know) as Number One, London. Like Admiral Nelson, the Duke of Wellington (to bury) in St. Paul's Cathedral.

*XIII. Read the letter of an English student to his friend and speak about his impressions of College life:*

"Dear John,

I meant to write you at once, but it took me long to get used to College life. College is a very big place and at first I got lost\*\* almost all the time I left my room. Things are much easier now and I hope you'll look me up some day and let me walk you about. You won't be disappointed, I promise. Oh, I'm good at showing people about. I'll say something like this:

\* Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle — Договор о мире в Аакене

\*\* to get lost — заблудиться

Our College was founded over two hundred years ago. On your right is the library which was built the same year the College was founded. The building on your left, which rather reminds me of a Gothic Cathedral, is in fact a gymnasium\*.

The trouble with College is that they want you to know such a lot of things you've never learnt. Did you ever hear of Michael Angelo? I didn't, until last week. He was a famous artist who lived in Italy in the Middle Ages\*\*. The whole class laughed because I thought he was an archangel.

I have some bad news. You know what happened? I failed\*\*\* in mathematics. It wasn't really my fault\*\*\*\*, it was just bad luck. I'll be taking another exam next month. I'll do my best to pass.

That's all for now. Hoping to hear from you soon,

*Nick.*

*P.S.* Speaking of classes, have you ever read "Hamlet"? If you haven't do it at once. It's perfectly splendid. I've been hearing about Shakespeare all my life, but I had no idea he really wrote so well."

#### *XIV. Use prepositions or adverbs if necessary:*

A. The language ... Australia is English. The climate ... Australia varies ... tropical ... the cool and temperate. Australia is the driest continent ... the Earth. About one half ... its territory is occupied ... deserts (пустыни) and semideserts. The commonest trees ... Australia are the eucalyptus, ... which there are over 500 kinds. There are also ocacia or mimosa, which is the national emblem ... Australia. Even stranger than plants are the animals. There live kangaroos, duckbills

\* gymnasium — спортзал

\*\* the Middle Ages — средние века

\*\*\* to fall in — провалиться по (какому-л. предмету)

\*\*\*\* It wasn't really my fault. — На самом деле это была не моя вина.

(утконосы), koalas (or koala bears) and a great number ... different birds, parrots ... them.

**B.** Canada is the world's second largest country. It occupies the whole ... the northern part ... the North American Continent. It is washed ... the Pacific Ocean ... the west, ... the Arctic Ocean ... the north, and ... the Atlantic Ocean ... the east. It borders on (граничит) the United States ... the south.

Canada has nearly 15 percent ... the world's fresh water surface (поверхность). There are so many lakes ... Canada that they have never been counted.

The climate ... the eastern and central parts ... Canada is continental ... hot summers and cold winters, but ... the south-western and southern parts ... the country the climate is mild. Canada's forests are one ... her greatest resources.

**C.** St. Paul's Cathedral is the Cathedral ... the city ... London and one ... the most famous churches ... the world.

Old St. Paul's which stood ... the same site (место), was destroyed ... the Fire of London. The present Cathedral was designed ... Sir Christopher Wren, and was finished ... 1710. St. Paul's contains memorials ... many national heroes, ... them Lord Nelson, Sir John Moore, the Duke of Wellington and Sir Christopher Wren.

There are steps up ... the Whispering Gallery\*, inside the dome (купол), where words whispered into the stone walls can be heard ... the other side ... the stone gallery; outside we have a magnificent view ... London.

**D.** Piccadilly Circus is one ... the busiest places ... London. ... the centre ... the square stands a statue ... Eros, the Greek god ... love. ... centuries Piccadilly has been the heart ... London's West End. The Underground station ... Piccadilly

---

\* the Whispering Gallery — Галерея шепота

Circus, ... its shops and newsstands, is used ... over 150,000 people a day. Piccadilly is a fine street, stretching\* ... the Circus ... Hyde Park. It has seen much history ... the centuries.

*XV. Use articles if necessary:*

**A. The City of New York**

Washington DC is ... capital of ... United States, but New York is ... biggest city. It is also ... world's tallest city. ... heart of New York is Manhattan, where ... buildings reach ... sky. ... most famous skyscraper in ... world is ... Empire State Building — 380 metres high with 102 floors. But ... tallest building in New York is ... World Trade Centre — its two towers are 415 metres high and ... express lifts take only ... few seconds to reach ... 110th floor. From here you can see ... whole of New York. ... Broadway is ... very long street, and ... home of New York theatres. It is also ... home of Macy's, ... largest department store in ... world. But if you are rich and want to spend ... money, then come to ... Fifth Avenue, which has ... most expensive shops in New York. Bridges and tunnels link Manhattan with Brooklyn and Queens on Long Island, and with the Bronx, where you can visit ... largest zoo in ... USA. New York is ... city of banks. Wall Street is ... financial centre of ... city. ... best known of more than 30 museums in ... city is ... Metropolitan Museum of Art. Its magnificent collection of European and American paintings contains ... works of many of ... greatest masters of art world, ... second best known is ... Museum of Modern Art. And crossing ... mouth of ... Hudson River is ... longest suspension bridge\*\* in ... world — ... Verrazano Narrows Bridge joins Long Island and States Island. Beyond ... bridge at ... entrance to New York harbour, stands ... most famous statue in ... world — ... Statue of Liberty. Manhattan is ... very beautiful place especially at ... night.

\* to stretch — *простира́ться*

\*\* suspension bridge — *висячий мост*

не, да? — Да, не был. — Тогда вы должны поехать на экскурсию по городу. Вам покажут все достопримечательности. 10. Красную площадь посещает множество туристов не только из зарубежных стран, но и из других городов России. 11. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы рассказали о своей поездке в США. 12. Президента США избирают каждые 4 года. 13. Город Вашингтон был назван в честь первого президента США Джорджа Вашингтона. 14. Большинство пьес Шекспира было написано в Лондоне. 15. Москва была основана в 1147 г. 16. Около половины всей территории Австралии занимают пустыни. 17. Старое здание Собора Святого Павла было разрушено во время пожара в Лондоне. 18. Музей Метрополитен в Нью-Йорке известен во всем мире. 19. Королева Елизавета II получила частное образование. 20. В США федеральные законы издает Конгресс.

*XVII. Read the following:*

### Europe Tours

Dan Frank is from Texas. He's on a 14-day tour of Europe. The tour started in London. At the moment he's in Prague. It's the eighth day of his tour. He's already been to seven countries and stayed in the capital cities. He's never been to Europe before, and he's already seen a lot of new places. Now he is in his hotel suite\* and is calling home.

*Mrs. Frank:* Hello... Dan? Is that you?

*Dan:* Yes, Momma.

*Mrs. Frank:* Where are you now, Dan?

*Dan:* I've just arrived in Prague, Momma.

*Mrs. Frank:* You haven't sent me any postcards yet.

*Dan:* Yes, I have... I've sent one from every city.

*Mrs. Frank:* Have you been to Paris yet, Dan?

\* suite [swit] — номер



## B. Who's Who at Madame Tussaud's

Every visitor to London knows who Madame Tussaud is — or was. And almost every visitor has seen her, ... old lady of 81, standing at ... entrance to her own exhibition. She is made of ... wax, like all ... models of people at ... exhibition.

Born in 1760, she learned ... art of making life-size portraits in ... wax when she was ... young girl in ... France. In 1802 she came to England and since 1855 her exhibition has ... permanent home in ... Baker Street, London. What was ... secret of her success? Her portraits were lifelike and convincing\*. She paid great attention to detail and spent ... lot of money on ... right clothes and effective lighting. And Madame Tussaud's portraits were always up to date and topical\*\*.

Thousands of people still queue up\*\*\* to look at these portraits of ... famous and ... infamous.

### XVI. Translate into English:

1. Великобритания отделена от континента проливом Ла-Манш. 2. Власть монарха в Британии ограничена парламентом. 3. Члены Палаты общин избираются народом. 4. Главой правительства в Британии считается премьер-министр, да? 5. На английском языке говорят во многих странах мира. В Канаде говорят на английском и французском. 6. В Вестминстерском аббатстве короновили многих королей и королев, они похоронены здесь же. 7. Уайтхолл — это улица, где расположены правительственные учреждения. 8. — Что я могу увидеть за один день в Лондоне? — А что вас интересует? — Меня интересуют исторические места. — Тогда вам следует поехать в центр Лондона. 9. — Вы никогда раньше не были в Вашингто-

\* convincing — убедительный

\*\* up to date and topical — современный и злободневный

\*\*\* to queue up — стоять в очереди

**Dan:** Yes, I have. I've also been to London, Brussels, Berlin...

**Mrs. Frank:** Have you been to Vienna yet?

**Dan:** No, I haven't. We're going to Vienna tomorrow.

**Mrs. Frank:** Dan! Are you still there?\*

**Dan:** Yes, Momma.

**Mrs. Frank:** How many countries have you seen now, Dan?

**Dan:** Well, this is the eighth day, so I've already seen eight countries.

**Mrs. Frank:** Have you spent much money, Dan?

**Dan:** Yes, Momma. I've bought a lot of souvenirs... and I want to buy some more. Can you send me a thousand dollars?

**Mrs. Frank:** All right, Dan. Dan, are you listening to me?

**Dan:** Yes, Momma.

**Mrs. Frank:** Have you taken many photographs, Dan?

**Dan:** Yes, Momma. I've met many beautiful girls... there's a girl from Texas on the tour, too. We've done everything together.

*1) Answer the questions:*

1. What countries has Dan Frank been to?
2. Where is he at the moment?
3. He has sent his mother postcards from every city, hasn't he?
4. Has he bought many souvenirs?
5. Who has he met on the tour?
6. Is his mother satisfied with his trip?

*2) Make up a telephone conversation from London (New York, Cape Town, Tokyo, etc.).*

*XVIII. Read the text and speak about Queen Elizabeth II:*

Elizabeth II, Queen of the UK, was born in London in 1926 as the eldest daughter of the Duke and Duchess of York.

\* Are you still there? — (эд.) Ты меня слушаешь?

She grew up in a happy home and was educated privately. Her father became king in 1936. Her grandfather was King George V, her great-grandfather was King Edward VII, her great-great-grandmother was Queen Victoria. In 1947 Princess Elizabeth was married to Philip Mountatten, who received the title of Duke of Edinburgh. They have four children: Charles, Anne, Andrew and Edward. When George VI died in 1952, Elizabeth became Queen Elizabeth the Second of Britain. The coronation took place at Westminster Abbey. Elizabeth II is one of the richest women in the world. Her son Charles, the future king of Britain, has two sons.

*XIX. Read the advertisement from a guide book of Moscow published in Australia, ask your partner questions about the text:*

Like Jerusalem and Rome, Moscow has been described as a place of pilgrimage. Yet, Moscow, as the fifth largest city in the world, is far more than a mecca for the faithful\*. Whether you wish to travel from Siberia to the Baltic or from St. Petersburg to Georgia, you will either be on one of the 3,700 trains that use Moscow's 9 railway stations each day, or you will fly on some of Aeroflot's 600,000 km of internal routes that need four airports in Moscow to service them.

On the first visit, foreigners are best advised to get a street map of Moscow and then take a bus tour that includes the major sights. While going by the Metro, look at the statues, stained glass, mosaics and crystal chandeliers that decorate some of the 140 stations.

A good guide book is an invaluable aid to what you may see in a limited period.

Some might choose to view the colourful onion domes of St. Basil's in Red Square, the gilded decorations and rare icons in the Kremlin's Cathedral Square, as well as the 200-tonne Czar Bell and the huge Czar Cannon...

---

\* the faithful — верующие

*XX. Read the text and reproduce it:*

The USA (the United States of America) is a federation of 50 states. 48 of these states are in the same general area between Canada in the north and Mexico in the south. The other two states are geographically separate. Alaska is in the extreme northwest of the American continent, and Hawaii is in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.

The federal capital is Washington, south of New York, near the east coast. Washington is the centre of federal government but each state has its own capital and its own government. State governments have a large amount of power and independence, they make their own laws and they're also responsible for education, for the state police force, for the prison system, for road building and many other things.

Federal laws are made by the Congress which is the equivalent of the British Parliament. There are two Houses: the House of Representatives and the Senate. Each state sends representatives and senators to the Congress. Elections to the House of Representatives are held every two years, while senators are elected for a 6-year period. The President is elected separately, together with the Vice-President. They serve for a term of four years. The President chooses the people who will form his Cabinet. These do not have to be elected Congressmen, they can be brought in from outside the Congress, but the Senate must agree to their appointment.

There are two main political parties in the United States: the Democrats and the Republicans. The Democrats are slightly more to the left than the Republicans, but the differences between their policies are not usually very great.

The United States does not have a separate ceremonial head of state.

*XXI. Read and reproduce the jokes:*1. **The American Tourist in England**

He was an American tourist in London and hired a guide to show him the city.

"How long did it take you to build this house?" he asked his guide as they passed a large hotel building.

"Why, about six months."

"Six months!" exclaimed the American tourist. "Why, it wouldn't take us more than six weeks to put up a building like that in New York."

They passed an office building which was quite new.

"And how long did it take to build that?"

"About four weeks," answered the guide.

"Four weeks?" said the American. "In New York we'd build a place like that in four days."

Nothing was said until they approached the Houses of Parliament.

"Well, that's not a bad-looking place. How long did it take you to build it?"

"Well, you may not believe me," answered the guide, "but that building wasn't there when I crossed the bridge last night."

2. An energetic American tourist came to visit the Windsor Castle in England. At the entrance a lot of colourful guide books were displayed. The guide advised the American to buy one of them. The American bought a guide book on the Windsor Castle and opened it at once. Then the guide was asked a lot of questions. "Was that famous vase brought from Egypt? Is the table made of oak from the Sherwood forest? How much money was paid for this table? Was the portrait really painted by Van Dyck? Is the portrait still kept in the castle?" All the questions were answered: "Yes, sir." Then the guide asked: "Won't you come in and see all those things?"

The American answered: "No, I won't. The pictures of all those things are printed in my guide book. I can't waste time. I can go on visiting other castles and museums."

3. Erich Remarque was once introduced to an American girl who was travelling in Germany. She was delighted to meet him because she had read all his books which were translated into English. Then she asked why Remarque had never visited the US. His answer was: "English is spoken in the US but unfortunately I don't speak it." In fact he knew only four sentences. The girl asked, "What are they?" The writer said, "Hallo. I love you. Forgive me. Ham and eggs, please." "Why," cried the girl, "with these sentences a long tour can be taken from Maine to California."

### XXII. Things to do:

1. Speak about England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Use the following table:

Information	England	Scotland	Wales	Northern Ireland
Area	130,441	78,775	20,768	14,120
Highest mountain	Scaffel Pike, 978 m	Ben Nevis, 1,342 m	Snowdon, 1,085 m	Slieve Donard, 852 m
Population	46,029,000	5,229,000	2,723,596	1,536,000
Largest city (population)	London 6,970,100	Glasgow 809,700	Cardiff 287,000	Belfast 363,000

2. Take a map of Great Britain and speak about the country. Take a map of Japan and do the same. Ask your group-mates to help you.

3. Compare the two islands: Australia and Great Britain.

4. Get into groups of four. Choose 3 different countries that you know something about and compare them. Write notes under the headings below and then talk about them.

**Size. Population. Climate. Industry. Cities.**

5. Imagine that:

1) you've just come home from London. Share your impressions with your friends.

2) you are planning a guided tour for a foreign delegation visiting your country for 3 days only. What cities will you show them and why?

3) you're in London aboard a double-decker. Ask the conductor about the places you're passing by.

6. Your friend wants to know a few things about London (New York, Moscow). Answer his questions.

7. Act as a guide in Moscow. Use postcards or pictures.

8. Write an advertisement to a guide book of London (New York, Washington, Paris, etc.).

9. Find some information about Oxford and Cambridge.

10. Suppose you're going to have holidays. What country (city) would you like to go to and why?

11. Make up a dialogue asking the way to some place of interest in your town (London, New York, Washington).

12. You are the Quiz master on a TV quiz programme. Ask questions. Begin your questions with: "where," "when," "who," "why"... Use this information in your answers:

1) President Kennedy, killed, Dallas, Texas.

2) President Kennedy, killed, November, 1963.

3) England, invaded, the Normans, 1066.

4) America, discovered, 15th century, Columbus.

5) Abraham Lincoln, killed, in a theatre.

6) Abraham Lincoln, shot.

7) Queen Victoria, crowned, 1837.

8) Queen Elizabeth II, crowned, 1953.

9) TV, invented, 1923.

10) Pompeii, destroyed, a volcano.

11) London Bridge, rebuilt, in America.

12) "Hamlet," written, Shakespeare.

*XXIII. Poems and songs to enjoy:*

1.           What are little boys made of?  
               What are little boys made of?  
               Frogs and snails  
               And puppy-dogs' tails  
               That's what little boys are made of.  
               What are little girls made of?  
               What are little girls made of?  
               Sugar and spice  
               And all things nice,  
               That's what little girls are made of.
  
2.           Hector Protector was dressed all in green,  
               Hector Protector was sent to the Queen.  
               The Queen did not like him,  
               No more did the King;  
               So Hector Protector was sent back again.
  
3.                               **For Want of a Nail**  
                                   For want of a nail  
                                   The shoe was lost,  
                                   For want of a shoe  
                                   The horse was lost,  
                                   For want of a horse  
                                   The rider was lost,  
                                   For want of a rider  
                                   The battle was lost,  
                                   For want of a battle  
                                   The kingdom was lost.  
                                   And all for the want  
                                   Of a horse shoe nail.

 4.

**Green Fields**

*By Terry Gilkyson, Rich Dehr, Frank Miller*

Once there were green fields kissed by the sun,  
 Once there were valleys where rivers used to run,



Once there was blue sky with white clouds high above,  
Once they were part of an everlasting love.  
We were the lovers who strolled through green fields.

Green fields are gone now, parched by the sun,  
Gone from the valleys where rivers used to run,  
Gone with the cold wind that swept into my heart,  
Gone with the lovers who let their dreams depart.  
Where are the green fields that we used to roam?

5.

### This Land Is Your Land

*Chorus:*

This land is your land, this land is my land  
From California to the New York Island  
From the redwood forest to the Gulf Stream waters  
This land was made for you and me.

As I went walking down that ribbon of highway,  
I saw above me that endless skyway.  
I saw below me that golden valley,  
This land was made for you and me.

I roamed and rambled and followed my footsteps  
To the sparkling sands of her diamond deserts  
While all around me a voice was saying,  
"This land was made for you and me."

As the sun was shining and I was strolling  
And the wheat fields waving and the dust clouds rolling,  
As the fog was lifting, a voice was chanting,  
"This land was made for you and me."

## UNIT XII

### TRADITIONS AND CUSTOMS

**Grammar:** Passive Voice (The Perfect and Continuous Tenses)  
(времена Perfect и Continuous в страдательном  
залоге.)  
The Article (артикль).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I. — ight — [əɪt]

light  
night  
might  
fight  
right  
bright  
delight

II.

-ate	
1. [eɪt] (verbs)	2. [ɪt] (adjectives; nouns)
separate	separate
graduate	graduate
cooperate	cooperate
appropriate	appropriate
delegate	delegate
	accurate
	moderate
	climate

III. Silent "l"

calf  
calm  
chalk  
could  
should  
would  
folk  
half

IV. kn-[n]

knit  
knife  
knight  
knot  
know  
knee

V. wr-[r]

write  
wrest  
wrong  
wry  
wrap  
wrist

VI. -ign — [aɪn]

assign  
design  
resign  
sign

- VII. 1. I would, if I could.  
If I couldn't, how could I?
2. No doubt, we should keep calm and talk on behalf of these folk.
3. Two little lambs on a cold night began to quarrel and to fight.

VIII. There was an old man  
And he had a calf  
And that's half.  
He took him out of the stall  
And put him on the wall  
And that's all.

### U Vocabulary

custom — обычай	to keep up — соблюдать
tradition — традиция	to play an important part — играть важную роль
traditional — традиционный	peculiarity — особенность
festival — праздник	to paint — раскрашивать
to celebrate — праздновать	to greet — приветствовать
to mark — отмечать	greetings — поздравления
to hold — проводить	to offer — предлагать, давать
to observe — соблюдать	to devote to — посвящать (чему-л.)
ancient ['eɪnʃnt] — древний	records — записи; летописи
New Year's Eve — канун Нового года	to attend — посещать
Easter — Пасха	competition — состязание
race — гонки	duty — долг; обязанность
pub — кабачок, небольшой клуб	to guard [gɑ:d] — охранять
to differ from — отличаться от	to enjoy oneself — наслаждаться
pancakes — блины	reunion — встреча (друзей, семьи)
religious — религиозный	goodwill — доброжелательность
to award a prize to smb. — наградить кого-л. призом	origin — происхождение
to win — выиграть	to knock at the door — стучать в дверь

occasion — случай, событие	to play a trick on smb. — подшутить
occasionally — случайно, иногда	над кем-л.
to decorate — украшать	to look after — присматривать за
to depend on — зависеть от	
to dedicate to — посвящать	

### Text

#### TRADITIONS AND CUSTOMS

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. In Britain traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in other countries.

Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. Foreigners coming to England are struck at once by quite a number of customs and peculiarities in English life. Some ceremonies are rather formal, such as the Changing of the Guard at Buckingham Palace, Trooping the Colour\*, the State opening of Parliament. Sometimes you will see a group of cavalymen riding on black horses through the streets of London. They wear red uniforms, shining helmets, long black boots and long white gloves. These men are Life Guards. Their special duty is to guard the king or the queen of Great Britain and very important guests of the country.

To this day an English family prefers a house with a fireplace and a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating. Most English love gardens. Sometimes the garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement painted green in imitation of grass and a box of flowers. They love flowers very much.

The English people like animals very much, too. Pet dogs, cats, horses, ducks, chickens, canaries and other friends of man have a much better life in Britain than anywhere else. In Britain they have special dog shops selling food, clothes and other things for dogs. In recent years the English began to

\* Trooping the Colour — вынос знамени в день рождения королевы

show love for more "exotic" animals such as crocodiles, elephants, tigers, cobras, camels.

Holidays are especially rich in old traditions and are different in Scotland, Ireland, Wales and England. Christmas is a great English national holiday and in Scotland it is not observed at all. But six days later, on New Year's Eve the Scots begin to enjoy themselves. All the shops and factories are closed on New Year's Day. People invite their friends to their houses. Greetings and presents are offered.

A new tradition has been born in Britain. Every year a large number of ancient motorcars drive from London to Brighton. Some of these veteran cars look very funny. This run from London to Brighton is a colourful demonstration. People are dressed in the clothes of those times. It is not a race, and most of the cars come to Brighton, which is sixty miles from London, only in the evening.

Give me a treat. — Угостите меня.

This tradition dates back to early history. — Эта традиция уходит далеко в историю (начинается очень давно).

Hallowe'en [hæləʊɪn] — канун Дня всех святых (31 октября)

Eisteddford [aɪ'stedfɔ:d] — состязание бардов (фестиваль валлийских певцов, музыкантов и поэтов), конкурс непрофессиональных поэтов

### ☺☹ Dialogues

1. A. I quite like Britain. How about you?  
 B. Well, it's OK. But the British!  
 A. What do you mean? What do you think of the British?  
 B. I think they are crazy\*.  
 C. Yes, I think so, too.  
 D. Really? I don't. They're very reserved\*\*, but they aren't crazy.

\* crazy — безумный, сумасшедший

\*\* reserved [rɪ'zɜ:vɪd] сдержанный, скрытный

- A. What about the beer? What do you think of British beer?  
 B. I don't think it's very good.  
 C. I don't think so either.  
 D. Really? I do. And I think British pubs are great!  
 C. Why's that?  
 D. Well, because the atmosphere is so good.  
 A. Yes, they are comfortable and friendly.

2. — Shall we stop for a minute and have a drink at this pub?  
 — All right. Why do you call them "pubs"?  
 — Oh, "pub" is short for "public house" — a place where anybody can buy a drink. Have you ever had cider?  
 — I don't think so. What is it?  
 — It's an apple drink. It's really a west-country drink. If you go down to Devon or Somerset, be careful. The cider there can be very strong.



Christmas means a lot to the British.

3. — What is Christmas to the British?

— Christmas means peace, goodwill, family reunion, Christmas presents — and all that kind of thing.

— Christmas time is a season of good cheer, isn't it?

— A good cheer? That means, does it not, a lot of eating and drinking?

— And what's the harm?\* We do like the old ways, the old traditional festivities.

— The British! They are so sentimental!

\* And what's the harm? — *А какой от этого вред?*

4. — What holidays are the most popular in Great Britain?

— I think Christmas and Easter. But it depends upon the part of the country, age group, and so on. Most of the holidays are of religious origin, such as Christmas, Easter, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Pancake Day. But there are some national holidays which are not connected with religion.

— What are they?

— Burns Night in Scotland, for example. This holiday is dedicated to the memory of the great Scottish poet Robert Burns.



5. — Do British holidays differ much from American ones?

— I don't think so but of course along with the similar religious holidays there are some which are not celebrated in both countries.

— Can you give me an example of any American holiday which is not celebrated in Great Britain?

— Sure. Thanksgiving Day\* which is celebrated in November, Columbus Day, in October, Independence Day, July 4 are national American holidays which are not celebrated in the UK.

6. — Do you know any holidays which are popular with children?

\* Thanksgiving Day— День Благодарения



— I believe, Christmas with its Christmas tree and presents, perhaps, and Hallowe'en are especially popular.

— When is Hallowe'en celebrated?

— On the last night in October.

— How is it celebrated?

— The children cut holes in a pumpkin\* to imitate a nose, mouth and eyes and put a lighted candle inside.

— And what do they do with them then?

— Then the children put the pumpkin on the porch of their house. And after that they take a big empty bag and walk around every house and knock at the door.

— And so what?

— Then they ask a traditional question: "Trick or treat?"

— What does it mean?

— It means "Give me a treat — an apple, a sweet, some candies or I'll play a trick on you."

7. — Have you ever attended Eisteddfod?

— No, I haven't. What is it?

— It's the most exciting Welsh traditional festival devoted to music and poetry.

— When is it held?

— Annually early in August.

— Is it an old custom to hold this festival?

— Oh, yes. This tradition dates back to early history, and there are records of competitions for Welsh poets and musicians in the 12th century.

---

\* The children cut holes in a pumpkin. — Дети вырезают отверстия в тыкве.



- When did you attend it last?
- This year when my uncle invited me to stay at his house in Caernarvon. We got up early in the morning and went to a large grassy field just outside the town.
- Were there many people there?
- Oh, yes! The streets were full of people and in the field there was a large crowd round a circle of big stones with an “altar stone” in the middle.
- What is this altar stone used for?
- The Chief Druid stepped on the altar stone and made a long speech in Welsh. I didn’t understand a word of it but the audience loved it.
- Were there any songs or poems performed?
- Yes, there were. A great number of songs and poems. And at the end of the festival there was a very interesting ceremony of awarding the bard of the year.
- You mean the winner of the competition?
- Yes. He was awarded the prize. It was the Crown, specially made for the occasion.
- I think I should go there next year. I like ancient traditions, besides I’ve never been to Wales.

8. — What is your favourite holiday?
- Mothers’ Day.
- Why?
- Because on this day I’m rewarded for all my work looking after the house and family during the rest of the year.
- Are you given presents on this day?
- Of course, I am. My husband and my children usually give me a card with fine words about how much I have done for them and how much they love me. And my husband brings me a big bunch of flowers from our garden... And traditionally they bring me breakfast in bed. It’s really splendid. On this day I’m the central figure in the family and I really feel the queen of the day!



My favourite holiday is Mothers' Day.

— And do they take you out somewhere?  
 — Sometimes we go to a restaurant to have lunch.  
 — It's a good idea to have a special holiday for mothers. But is there Fathers' Day?

— Yes, there is. But it is less widely celebrated than Mothers' Day. Perhaps this is because fathers are not loved so much as mothers!

### Exercises

#### *I. Finish the following:*

1. Great Britain has very many ... 2. Foreigners coming to England are struck by ... 3. The special duty of Life Guards is to ... 4. Englishmen prefer their own house with ... 5. Pet dogs, cats, horses and other friends of man have ... 6. Christmas is a great ... 7. In Scotland on New Year's Day ... 8. Every year a large number of old cars drive ... 9. Many English-speaking countries have similar ... 10. Most of all children like ... 11. Eisteddfod is ... 12. I like Mothers' Day because ...

## II. Use the right word:

dates back; hold; painted; pancakes; sell; holiday (3); events; horse-racing; celebrated (2); connected; ressed up; celebrations; traditional; Christmas tree; decorated; traditions; presents (2); Santa Clause; desert; eat; games.

**Pancake Day.** Ash Wednesday is the day in February when the Christian period of Lent (пост) begins. It ... to the time when Christ went into the ... and fasted (постился) for forty days. On Pancake Tuesday, the day before Ash Wednesday, they ... lots of pancakes. These are made from flour, milk and eggs, and fried in a hot pan. Some towns also ... parake races on that day. People run through the streets holding a frying pan (сковорода) and throwing ... in the air. Of course, if they drop the pancake they lose the race!

**Easter eggs.** At Easter time, the British celebrate the idea of new birth by giving each other chocolate or Easter eggs which are opened and eaten on Easter Sunday. On Good Friday bakers ... hot cross buns, which are tosted and eaten with butter. Easter Monday is a ... and many people travel to the seaside for a day or go and watch one of the sporting ... such as football or ...

**Ghosts and witches\*.** Hallowe'en means "holy evening," and is ... on 31st October. Although it is a much more important ... in the United States than Britain, it is ... by many people in the UK. It is particularly ... with witches and ghosts. At parties people ... in strange costumes and pretend they are witches. They cut horrible faces in pumpkin and other vegetables and put a candle inside, which shines through the eyes. People may play funny ... such as trying to eat an apple from a bucket of water without using their hands.

**Christmas.** This is a day when people are travelling home to be with their families on Christmas Day, 25th December.

\* ghosts and witches — привидения и ведьмы

For most British families, this is the most important ... of the year, it combines the Christian celebration of the birth of Christ with the ... festivities of winter. Most families ... their houses with brightly-coloured paper or holly (остролист), and they usually have a ... in the corner of the front room, glittering with coloured lights and decorations. There are a lot of ... connected with Christmas but perhaps the most important one is the giving of ... . Children leave a stocking at the end of their bed on Christmas Eve, hoping that ... will bring them small ... , fruit or nuts.

*III. 1) Say when the following holidays are observed in some English-speaking countries:*

New Year's Day		January 1
St. Valentine's Day		February 14
Mothers' Day		April 1
Independence Day		October, 2nd Monday
Labour Day	is marked	September, 1st Monday
Columbus Day	is celebrated	November, 1st Tuesday
Hallowe'en	is observed	November, 4th Thursday
Election Day	is held	December 25
Thanksgiving Day		May, 2nd Sunday
Christmas Day		October 31
April Fools' Day		July 4

*2) Say when the following holidays are observed in our country:*

New Year's Day, Christmas Day, Women's Day, Victory Day, Easter, Tatyana's Day, Spring and Labour Day.

*IV. Translate into Russian paying attention to the use of the Passive Voice:*

A. 1. Christmas Day has been celebrated since ancient times. 2. Many old Russian traditions have been revived\* in

\* to revive — *возродить*

our country. 3. The birthday cake with 20 candles has been brought in. 4. His anniversary has been celebrated throughout the country. 5. Easter eggs have been painted. 6. The pie has been eaten, speeches have been made and wedding presents have been opened. 7. Have you been asked this question? 8. The newspapers haven't been delivered yet.

**B.** What is being done in the house for the guests? — The whole house is being decorated; the guest room is being washed and cleaned; in the sitting room the TV set is being fixed and big dinner is being cooked, a cake is being baked and celebration cards are being written for the guests. What else can be done? — Some flowers can be cut and brought in from the garden. — Is the table being laid? — Yes, it is.

**C.** 1. The second course was followed by fruit salad. 2. His name is often referred to in the articles. 3. He is such a bore. He is never listened to. 4. The policeman has been sent for. 5. This film was much spoken about. 6. We were treated to ice cream. 7. If you wear this hat you'll be laughed at. 8. We were shown around the building. 9. Your luggage will be looked after.

*V. Use the verbs in the Passive Voice:*

1. They have decorated a huge New-Year tree in the centre of the square. 2. We had taken out our luggage before the car arrived. 3. What music are they playing? 4. They are speaking on educational problems. 5. I hope that he will have received my letter by Saturday. 6. I have cooked the dinner and laid the table. 7. They were singing folk songs. 8. Don't worry, we'll look after your children. 9. I have made a few New Year's resolutions\*. 10. Nobody has lived in this house for a long time. 11. She opened the door and let him in.

\* to make a resolution — *принять решение*

*VI. Open the brackets using the right form of the verb in the Passive Voice:*

A. 1. Six public holidays (to celebrate) in Great Britain. 2. Song festivals (to hold) in Wales every year. 3. His next birthday (to mark) at a restaurant. 4. Many social customs (to connect) with the celebration of Christmas in Great Britain. 5. A big Christmas tree (to put up) in Trafalgar Square a week ago. 6. The Christmas tree (to decorate) brightly by children tonight. 7. On Boxing Day\* children and other members of families (to give) presents. 8. An exciting lecture on British history (to give) in our club. 9. The First of May (to celebrate) as the holiday for Labour in 1889 first. 10. Easter Peace Marches always (to organize) in many European countries. 11. He (to elect) President 3 years ago. 12. London (to divide) into two parts by the river Thames. 13. The financial and business part of London (to call) "the City." 14. A very beautiful folk song (to sing) when I came into the hall. 15. He (to award) the first prize for his poems.

## B. The Loch Ness Monster

The story of the Loch Ness monster begins in 1933 when it (to see) for the first time. Since then it (to see) at least once every year and (to photograph) many times. The first photograph (to take) by a local man in November, 1933. On one occasion, large brown eyes (to see) and horns\*\* (to report) several times. Ears (not to mention) yet.

The monster, however (not to forget), and probably never (to forget). It is known that it sometimes leaves the loch and a few years ago it (to see) running along the main road not far from a cafe. Occasionally two monsters (to see) at the same

\* Boxing Day — *день рождественских подарков, второй день рождества (26 декабря)*

\*\* horns — *рога*

time. It (not to know) whether they are father and son, husband and wife, or perhaps monster and girlfriend. But the monster and its activities (to consider) still a mystery.

*VII. Use the verbs in brackets in the correct tense form (Active or Passive):*

A. The six ravens\* (to keep) in the Tower of London now for centuries. They used to come in from Essex for food cracker when the Tower (to use) as a palace. Over the years people (to think) that if the ravens ever left the Tower, the monarchy would fall. So Charles II (to decree) that six ravens should always (to keep) in the Tower and should (to pay) a wage from the treasury\*\*. Sometimes they (to live) as long as 25 years but their wings (to clip\*\*\*) so they can't fly away, and when a raven (to die), another raven (to bring) from Essex.

B. The ceremony of Trooping the Colour (to be) one of the most fascinating. It (to stage) in front of Buckingham Palace. It (to hold) annually on the monarch's "official" birthday which is the second Saturday in June. Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II (to be) Colonel-in-Chief of the Life Guards. She (to escort) by Horse Guards riding to the Parade. The ceremony (to accompany) by the music of bands. The procession (to head) by the Queen.

*VIII. Use prepositions or adverbs:*

### Burns Night

There are hundreds ... Burns Clubs ... the world, and ... 25th January they all hold Burns Night celebrations to mark the birth ... Scotland's greatest poet. The first club was founded ... Greenock, Renfresshire ... 1802. The traditional menu ...

\* ravens — вороны

\*\* treasury — казна

\*\*\* to clip — подрезать

the suppers is chicken broth, boiled salt herring, haggis with turnips and mashed potatoes. The arrival ... the haggis is usually heralded ... the music ... bagpipes\*. "The Immortal Memory" is toasted, and the company stand ... silent remembrance. Then follows dancing, pipe music, and selections ... Burns's lyrics, the celebration finishes ... the poet's famous "Auld Lang Syne."

*IX. Use articles if necessary:*

**A.**

**Christmas**

Most people in ... Britain see Christmas as ... major festival of ... year — when parties are given and gifts are received. Almost all ... people are having fun\*\* on Christmas Eve, especially children. On Christmas Eve, children hang ... stockings at ... end of their beds or over ... fireplace. They are told that Father Christmas, or Santa Claus, arrives at ... night from ... North Pole and fills each stocking with ... presents. The children open their presents — put there secretly by their parents — on Christmas morning.

Lunch is ... most important point on Christmas Day. ... traditional lunch consists of ... roast turkey with ... vegetables, followed by Christmas pudding, which is made with ... dried fruit and ... brandy. Sometimes ... coin is put in ... pudding as ... surprise.

... day after Christmas is called Boxing Day (after the church box which was opened for ... poor on that day) and this too is ... public holiday.

**B.**

**New Year's Eve in Scotland**

People all over ... Britain celebrate ... passing of ... old year and ... coming of ... new. In Scotland, Hogmanay — as it is

\* bagpipe — *волынка (шотландский народный музыкальный инструмент)*

\*\* to have fun — *веселиться*



called there — is almost as important as Christmas. ... Scots take New Year's Eve very seriously. There is a New Year Eve Fire Festival; ... men parade with blazing tar barrels\*, they throw them into ... great bonfire. The "First Foots" then set out. In Scotland "first footing" is ... common custom; it's considered lucky if ... dark-haired man is ... first to set foot in ... house after midnight on Hogmanay, bringing ... coin, ... piece of ... bread, or ... lump of ... coal as ... symbol of plenty\*\* for ... coming year.

## C.

## Robin Hood

It is generally believed that Robin Hood was ... man who fought for ... better life of ... poor people. How old ... story about Robin Hood is nobody knows. ... oldest ballads about him were written down after 1400. One of ... ballads that comes from those distant times says that Robin Hood was ... Yorkshireman. ... ballad says,

"For he was ... good outlaw\*\*\*  
And did poor men much good."

Did such a Robin ever live? His name is first mentioned in Government documents of ... 13th century.

So one can be sure that Robin Hood did live and was something like ... man described in these early ballads.

He became such ... popular hero that in many places there was ... special Robin Hood's day, attended by thousands of ... people.

In ... 16th century ... writer Anthony Munday decided to make ... nobleman out of Robin. Perhaps they thought that it was too dangerous for ... ordinary people to think that ... ordinary men could be ... heroes who tried to do "poor men much good."

\* blazing tar barrels — горящие бочки с дегтем

\*\* symbol of plenty — символ изобилия

\*\*\* outlaw — человек, объявленный вне закона

X. Read the text and say what is common and what is different in American and our customs:

### American Customs

Americans are very punctual. It is important to be on time at business, social and public events. If you must miss an appointment for any reason, telephone ahead to the person you were supposed to meet, saying that you won't be able to come.

When you are invited to a home where food will be served, it is best to let your host or hostess know in advance if you are on a diet. It is all right, however, to say, "No, thank you," if you would rather not eat or drink what is being served. No further explanation is needed, but if you would like to explain, people are interested.

In some homes the atmosphere is quite formal. In others, it is informal and you may sit at the kitchen table to eat dinner. Informality is a way of taking you into the warmth of the family circle.

It is not always customary to sit at dinner table as we do in Russia. When you are at a party you may be walking from one sitting room to another, talking to the guests with a glass of wine in your hand. Food is served in one of the rooms and you can help yourself to whatever you like and whenever you like.

The Americans may have a party on one occasion in several houses at a time. The party starts in one house where they have some light wine and snacks, and then move on to another house and still another, travelling from house to house, taking drinks and food with them; and previous arrangements are made\* about what food each family cooks. Normally three or four houses are involved\*\*. Such a party is called progressive dinner.

\* previous arrangements are made — (зд.) *заранее договариваются*

\*\* Normally three or four houses are involved. — *Обычно принимают участие две или три семьи.*

Generally Americans tend to be fairly informal. They often (but not always) address each other by their given names on first meetings. They also tend to abbreviate a lot. For example, Mass. Ave. means Massachusetts Avenue. Do not be surprised and ask what these abbreviations mean.

New Year's Day has traditionally been the occasion for starting new programmes and giving up bad habits. People talk about "turning over a new leaf." Many Americans make New Year's resolutions, promising themselves and their families to improve their behaviour. Typical New Year's resolutions are to spend less money, give up smoking, begin a diet, or control one's temper. To Americans the closing of one calendar year and the opening of another is a serious, yet happy occasion.

*XI. Read the text and say: 1) how the festival appeared; 2) how it is celebrated in the USA and 3) in Canada.*

### Thanksgiving Day

Thanksgiving Day is a public holiday in the United States. It now comes on the fourth Thursday in November. This is a day for family reunions. Thanks are offered in the churches for the blessings\* of the year, and at home a big dinner that usually includes roast turkey and cranberry sauce\*\* is served.

Thanksgiving is a harvest festival, and is one of the oldest and most popular celebrations in the world. The original celebration in the United States was held in 1621 after the first harvest in New England. The Pilgrims had sailed across the Atlantic Ocean on the "Mayflower," arriving December 21, 1620. Only half of the original band survived the cold winter. But the first harvest, fortunately, was good.

The date of this first feast is not known and there is no record that it was called "thanksgiving." But two years later the

\* blessings — благословения

\*\* cranberry sauce — клюквенный соус

Pilgrims set apart a day of thanks for rain that put an end to a long dry period. Later, Thanksgiving days following harvest came to be celebrated in all the colonies of New England, but not on the same day. It was during the third year of the Civil War, October 3, 1863, that President Abraham Lincoln proclaimed a national Thanksgiving. In 1951, the United States Congress named the fourth Thursday of November a Thanksgiving Day.

Canada has long celebrated a Thanksgiving Day. It is now always the second Monday in October. They also like turkey, served with fresh vegetables and fruits. Many people go to church in the morning. The first annual Thanksgiving for all the Canadian provinces was October 9, 1879.

*XII. A. Read the text.*

*B. Think of a specific Russian holiday.*

### St. Valentine's Day

In Europe and North America, February the 14th is famous as St. Valentine's Day. It is customary on that day to send a Valentine, a card with an affectionate message\*, to



Will you be my Valentine?

someone you love, or to your best friends. You don't sign your name, and for the person whom you send this card it's interesting to guess who has sent the card. Of course, it's particularly young people who look forward to Valentine's Day, hoping to receive many cards. The cards may be happy or sad, romantic or

\* an affectionate message — *послание с признанием в любви*

humorous, serious or ridiculous, and may be sent to all people you know. Here are some examples of Valentines:

1. I'll be your sweetheart,  
If you will be mine,  
All of my life  
I'll be your Valentine...
2. "Dear Stephanie, I am going to be a millionaire when I grow up. Now, will you be my Valentine?  
Jerome."
3. "Dear Debbie, I can't love you anymore. I have a dog now.  
Bruce."
4. "Dear William, let's get married so we can do our homework together.  
Love, Diane."
5. "Dear Carole, first I love my mother and father. Then I love my grandparents. Then I love my cat Tubby and my canary Yellowbird. Then I love my records and hi-fi set\* and after that I love you.  
Your boyfriend, Louis."

*XIII. Read the legend and say what holiday it is connected with:*

Once upon a time there was a big forest through which many travellers went to get to the town on the other side. The forest was so big and dark that the travellers often got lost. They tried to find their way and finally came to a pretty little cottage where a witch tricked the poor travellers by placing a magic spell on them\*\*. One day a poor little girl got lost in the forest. It grew very dark and the girl was frightened. She tried

\* hi-fi set — радиоприемник с высокой точностью воспроизведения

\*\* to place a magic spell on smb. — заколдовать кого-л.

many times to light the candle but couldn't. Then the poor girl walked under a big nut tree but the witch turned the nut over the little girl's head into a pumpkin. The girl felt around in the dark and found out a pumpkin. She hollowed it and put the candle into the pumpkin, and then put it on her head. After a while she came to the witch's cottage. On seeing a horrible two-headed monster the witch fell down on the stone floor and soon died. The magic spell was lifted and the travellers were saved\*.

#### *XIV. Translate into English:*

1. Национальная галерея в Лондоне была построена в период между 1832 и 1838 годами. 2. Иностранцев, приезжающих в Британию, поражает обилие традиций и обычаев. 3. В Шотландии Рождество не отмечают. 4. Кроме праздников религиозного происхождения, есть праздники, которые не связаны с религией. 5. В России после реформы календаря Рождество отмечают после Нового года. 6. Рождественская елка уже украшена. Можно начинать праздновать, да? 7. Все приготовили для приема гостей? — Индейка жарится в духовке, ее подадут через 10 минут. 8. Родители не ложились спать, пока не были упакованы подарки для всех детей. 9. Зал украшали для празднования юбилея. Никого не впускали. 10. Национальный день Благодарения провозгласил президент Линкольн в 1863 году, и с тех пор его отмечают в последний четверг ноября. 11. Если вас пригласили в гости, где будут подавать еду, следует заранее сказать, если вы соблюдаете диету. 12. В канун Нового года принимают решения начать новую жизнь, тратить поменьше денег, бросить курить и т.д., дают всевозможные обещания. 13. В последние годы во многих городах США устраивают бесплатные музыкальные концерты для публики. 14. В тык-

\* to save — *спасать*

ве вырезают дырки для глаз, носа и рта, а внутри зажигают свечку. 15. Лохнесское чудовище видели и сфотографировали много раз с тех пор, как его впервые увидели в 1933 году. 16. Профессор рассердился за то, что 1 апреля над ним подшутили. 17. За праздниками последовали будни. 18. За что его критикуют? — Его лекции никто не слушает. 19. Надеюсь, что мою открытку получат до праздника. 20. Вы знаете, из чего делают йоркширский пудинг? Нет? Я тоже не знаю.

*XV. Read to the following and speak about the average British family:*

### **The Average British Family**

This average British family lives in a semi-detached house with a garden in the south of England. They own their house, which is situated in the suburbs of a large town. The house has three bedrooms. On average\* they have two children and a pet. The family drives a two-year old Ford Cortina.

He works in the office of an engineering company for 40 hours a week and earns 200 pounds per week. He starts at 9.00 in the morning and finishes at 5.30 in the evening. He goes to work by car, which takes him 20 minutes. He doesn't particularly like his job, but there are chances of promotion.

She works in a service industry for three days a week and earns 95 pounds. She works locally and goes there by bus. She quite likes her job as it gets her out of the house. She meets people and it's close to the children's school.

The children go to a state school which is a few miles from home. A special bus comes to pick them up every day. They are at school from 9.00 to 3.30.

The most popular evening entertainment is watching television or video, which the average person does for two and a

\* on average — в среднем

half hours a day. After that, the next most popular activity is visiting friends, going to the cinema or a restaurant, or going to the pub. The most popular hobby is gardening and the most popular sports are fishing, football and tennis.

*XVI. Read the letter from an American girl and say what facts of everyday life of Americans you have learnt:*

"Dear Natasha,

I was so happy when I received your letter. I'm glad we have the chance to be friends. It sounds like it is very pretty where you live. I would love to come and visit you sometime.

I'm going to tell you a little about myself. I am 13, I live in Litchfield Park, which is right next to Phoenix, Arizona. Where I live, you can walk down the street and there are palm trees everywhere. It is very pretty, considering the fact that I live in the desert. Summer is coming, and in the middle of July, it can get as high as 48° Centigrade. That is very hot! One thing that makes living here easier, is our swimming pool. But I love it here, despite the heat. It is a nice neighbourhood. I don't have any pets, but my little sister has a bird. Her name is Tiffany, she is seven years old. She did some little job around the house for my parents and earned money to buy two birds. My parents bought the cage. When Tiffany had only had her birds for 3 days, one of them died. It was really sad. She was crying and was afraid that her other bird would die. But so far the bird has been fine. It is a girl, Tiffany named her Angel. She is a parakeet with blue and white feathers.

Do you have any brothers or sisters? I have 3. Collette, the oldest, is 16 years old. She got her driver's licence\* last August, the day after her birthday. At what age do people in your country get their driver's licence? I have a little brother, Jordan. He is ten years old, and he is in the fourth grade. And I've already told you about Tiffany.

\* driver's licence — *водительские права*



I don't have many hobbies, but I like to do things outdoors. I love to play tennis, but I'm afraid that I'm not very good yet. I also play the piano, and I love to dance. What sports do you play? We also have softball, soccer, golf, and swimming here. What are some of the activities you and your friends like to do? Tell me about your school and your friends. What is your favourite subject? My favourite is math, and I also like reading.

Once again, I really enjoyed your letter, and learning about you. I hope that we can become great friends, and maybe some day I can see you in person. But until then, I would love to have a picture of you, I have enclosed one of me. Write back, and tell me all about your family.

Your friend,

Crystal Davis."

*XVII. Read an extract from a letter written by an American to his Russian friend. Speak about the news of his family and their way of life.*

"...Now please let me tell some news of my family here in California. My wife Carol is in good health and has been very busy helping to rescue\* the dogs and cats who were in our great fire in Oakland hills not far from our house. Over 3,000 houses burned to the ground and hundreds of animals (not to speak of people!) were displaced; many pets ran into hiding in ruins. Carol and her friends have been able to help find many of these pets and return them to their owners; for many fire survivors\*\* their pet is their only remaining possession\*\*\* after being burned out completely. Carol also gardens in our vegetable plot and loves flowers and plants.

\* to rescue ['reskjʊ:] — *спасать*

\*\* survivors — *те, кому удалось спастись*

\*\*\* their only remaining possession — *единственное, что у них осталось*.

My oldest son Steve is now 31 years and works as a computer repair specialist; he has met a very nice woman and may be changing his single-person status soon. My second son, Dan, is 30 and married and has 4 wonderful sons, ages 3 months to 6 years; he is a builder of houses and additions to houses. My daughter Katie is 23 years and will graduate from university in 1992 as a writer of stories for magazines and papers. All of my kids live within 80 miles of our home in Moraga and we see them often. Regarding myself, I continue to work part-time as a consulting Engineer in Geological and Geotechnical Engineering and I am also busy trying to help establish a resort village in northern California where city people can go and visit and live in simple cabins in the woods (like your dachas!) and garden or rest from the pressures of city living. Actually I got the idea partly from seeing your dacha villages in your countryside.

It's time to close this letter. I hope this finds you in good spirits, and I do hope you will respond soon!

With love and kindest regards to you,

Edward."

### XVIII. Read and reproduce the jokes:

1. When Australia's discoverers went ashore, what was their surprise when they saw a strange-looking animal with a large tail jumping around on its strong hind legs.

"What is it?" they asked a friendly aboriginal who replied "Kangaroo," which in his language was "I don't understand you."

The Europeans took it for the name of the animal and it came to stay.

2. Once Mark Twain was travelling in France by train. He was going to a small town near Paris. It was very late at night, he was very tired and sleepy. He asked the conductor to wake

him up when they got to that town and went to sleep. It was early morning when the writer woke up, the train was already in Paris.

Mark Twain was very angry. He ran up to the conductor and cried out:

"I asked you to wake me up. Why didn't you do it? I am very angry with you."

The conductor looked at him for a moment and said: "You may be very angry, but not so angry as the American whom I put off the train instead of you."

### 3. An Englishman in Japan

Once an Englishman went to Japan. He had a Japanese servant who was very polite. The Englishman wanted to get up early one morning and asked his servant to wake him at six o'clock.

At 6 o'clock the servant came into the Englishman's room very quietly. When he saw that the Englishman was sleeping, he took a piece of paper and wrote some words on it. Then he quietly left the room.

The Englishman woke up at eleven o'clock, jumped out of bed, looked at his watch and then saw the piece of paper on the table. It said, "Dear Sir, it is six o'clock now. Please get up."

### 4. A Story Too Terrible to Tell

Three men came to New York for the first time. They took a room in a hotel. In the evening they went out sightseeing, and did not come back till nearly three in the morning. The room they had taken was on the 43d floor. "I am sorry, gentlemen," said the porter, "but the elevator does not work, there is something wrong with it. You will have to walk up to your room." This was too bad. But the men agreed to tell stories on the way up in order to while away the time.

By the time the first one had told his story they had climbed up to the 14th floor. The next story kept them amused

till they had reached the 31st floor. At last it was time for the third man to tell his story, but he refused. He said that his story was so terrible that he simply could not tell it. They continued climbing and all the time the two asked him to begin. At last they stopped and refused to go on unless he told them his terrible story. "The story I have to tell you is a short one," he said at last, "we have left the key to our room downstairs with the porter."

5: Two elderly Englishmen were talking about young people today. One of them said, "Young people now are so different from what we were thirty years ago. Look at that young person with short hair, smoking a cigarette and wearing jeans. What is it — a boy or a girl? It's impossible to say!"

"It's a girl," said a middle-aged person sitting near them on a bench.

"I'm sorry, sir," said the first Englishman. "I suppose you are her father."

"I'm not," was the answer. "I'm her mother."

#### *XIX. Things to do:*

1. Comment on the following proverbs; give Russian equivalents:

So many countries, so many customs.

When in Rome do as the Romans do.

Love me, love my dog.

My house is my castle.

2. Write down your New Year's resolutions.

3. Read the poem and speak on the English character:

#### **The English**

They dress in what they like;

They are interested in sport;

They partake in all activities

If they think they ought.  
They all succeed in doing  
Their work in five short days,  
Which leaves them the two longest ones  
To spend in different ways.  
Then some indulge in gardening,  
Or walking in the rain.  
And some delight in cricket,  
Or in riding in the plain.  
In spite of what's around him  
The average Englishman  
Does crosswords in the newspaper  
In pencil — if he can.  
Involved in any accident  
The English take a pride  
In being unemotional;  
They take things in their stride.  
In any circumstances —  
Whatever they may be —  
The English solve their problems  
With an English cup of tea.

4. Speak about:

1) Russian traditions and customs;

2) your favourite holiday.

5. Answer the questions of Christmas Quiz:

1) When was the first Christmas tree introduced to Britain?

A. About 1920.

B. About 1950.

C. About 1830.

D. About 1870.

2) Who made the Christmas tree popular in Britain?

A. Father Christmas.

B. Queen Victoria.

C. Good King Wenceslas.

D. Queen Elizabeth II.

3) Which of these things would you use to decorate your house with at Christmas time?

- A. Punch.                      B. mistletoe.  
C. streamers.                  D. holly.

4) What would you expect to find in a Christmas stocking?

- A. plum pudding.              B. money.  
C. old clothes.                 D. small presents.

5) Which of these things would you not find on your plate at Christmas?

- A. turkey.                      B. plum pudding.  
C. ivy.                          D. snow.

6) Where does the tradition of decorating a house with mistletoe at Christmas come from?

- A. Germany.                    B. the Druids.  
C. Bohemia.                    D. Turkey.

Answers: 1. C; 2. B; 3. B, C, D; 4. D; 5. C, D; 6. B.

6. Look at the table and give as much information as possible. Use the words: to be based on; to be produced by; to be presented by; to be arranged by; to be written by; to be designed by; to be directed by; to be taken by; to be conducted by.

April 1986	Eugene Onegin	Music: P. Tchaikovsky Author: A. Pushkin	Director: Conductor: Svetlanov	Leading actress: T. Sinyavskaya
May 1986	Swan Lake	Music: P. Tchaikovsky Designer: Smirnov	Director: Grigorovitch Conductor: Temirkanov	Leading actors: Vasiliev, Maksimova
June 1987	The Lady with the Lap Dog	Music: R. Schedrin Author: A. Chekhov Designer: Bykov	Director: Conductor:	Leading actors: Plisetskaya, Gordeyev

7. Write Valentine cards to each other.

8. Write a letter about yourself and your family to your foreign friend.

### XX. Poems and songs to enjoy:

1.                      There was a composer named List  
Whose music no one could resist.  
When he swept the keyboard  
Nobody could be bored,  
And now that he's gone he is missed.

#### 2.                      Christmas Message

*H.W. Longfellow*

I heard the bells on Christmas Day  
Their old familiar carols play,  
And wild and sweet  
The words repeat  
Of peace on earth, good will to men.

3.                      The rose is red, the violets are blue,  
The honey's sweet and so are you.  
Thou art my love and I am thine  
I drew thee to my Valentine.  
The lot was cast and when I drew  
And fortune said it should be you.

#### 4.                      Halloween Subtraction

*Mary Alice Kelly*

Three little ghosts on Halloween night  
Saw a witch and shrieked in fright.  
The witch just laughed and shouted, "Boo!"  
One ghost ran home and that left two.

Two little ghosts in two little sheets  
Went to a door to say "Trick or treat."  
But when the door swung open wide,  
A scary goblin stood inside.

One ghost gulped and said to the other,  
 "I'm going home and stay with my mother."  
 Of the three little ghosts, there was now one alone,  
 Too frightened to utter a groan or a moan,

One little ghost who shivered and shook  
 With every single step he took.  
 A Friday-cat ghost can't have much fun,  
 So he cried, "Wait for me!" and then there was none.

5. **Clementine**

In a cavern, by a canyon,  
 Excavating for a mine,  
 Dwelt a miner, forty-niner,  
 And his daughter Clementine.

*Chorus:*

Oh, my darling, oh, my darling,  
 Oh, my darling Clementine,  
 You are lost and gone for ever,  
 Dreadful sorry, Clementine.

Light she was, and like a fairy,  
 And her shoes were number nine,  
 Herring boxes without topses  
 Sandals were for Clementine.

Drove she ducklings to the water  
 Every morning just at nine,  
 Struck her foot against a splinter,  
 Fell into the foaming brine.

Rosy lips above the water,  
 Blowing bubbles mighty fine,  
 But, alas, I was no swimmer,  
 So I lost my Clementine.

How I missed her! How I missed her!  
 How I missed my Clementine!  
 But I kissed her little sister,  
 And forgot my Clementine.

## UNIT XIII

### HISTORY OF ENGLAND

**Grammar:** Sequence of Tenses (согласование времен).  
 Direct and Indirect Speech (прямая и косвенная  
 речь).

#### Phonetic Exercises

*Say with the teacher:*

I.	1. [ɔ:]	2. [ju:]	3. [f]	4. [laɪz]
	law	Europe	laugh	nationalization
	awe	Eugene	enough	civilization
	thaw	eucalyptus	tough	realization
	awful	euphemism	rough	normalization
	draw	Euphrates	cough	stabilization
	saw	neutral		specialization
	raw	feudal		materialization

#### II.

Whose woods these are I think I know.  
 His house is in the village, though:  
 He will not see me stopping here  
 To watch his woods fill up with snow.  
 My little horse must think it queer  
 To stop without a farmhouse near  
 Between the woods and frozen lake  
 The darkest evening of the year.  
 He gives his harness bells a shake  
 To ask if there is some mistake.  
 The only other sound's the sweep  
 Of easy wind and downy flake.

The woods are lovely, dark, and deep,  
But I have promises to keep,  
And miles to go before I sleep,  
And miles to go before I sleep.

### U Vocabulary

<b>BC</b> = Before Christ [kraɪst] — до нашей эры	<b>invasion</b> — вторжение, завоевание
<b>AD</b> — нашей эры	<b>throne</b> — трон
<b>swamp</b> — болото	<b>the late king</b> — покойный король
<b>troop</b> — войско	<b>to claim the throne</b> — претендовать на трон
<b>rapidly</b> — быстро	<b>to strengthen power</b> — укрепить власть
<b>road junction</b> — пересечение дорог	<b>battle</b> — битва
<b>site</b> — место	<b>to arm</b> — вооружать
<b>trade</b> — ремесло; торговля	<b>bodyguard</b> — личная охрана
<b>castle</b> [kɑ:sl] — замок	<b>to withdraw</b> — удалиться
<b>evident</b> — явный, очевидный	<b>to conquer</b> — завоевать
<b>to denote</b> — обозначить	<b>conqueror</b> — завоеватель
<b>fort</b> — укрепление	<b>church</b> — церковь
<b>to owe</b> — быть должным, обязанным	<b>Proper Names</b>
<b>spring</b> — источник, ручей	<b>Julius Caesar</b> ['ju:liəs 'sɪzə] — Юлий Цезарь
<b>to possess</b> — владеть	<b>the Romans</b> — римляне
<b>possession</b> — владение	<b>Pharos</b> — маяк
<b>carpet</b> — ковер	<b>Dover</b> — Дувр
<b>lighthouse</b> — маяк	<b>the Anglo-Saxons</b> — англо-саксы
<b>to depart</b> — уходить, удаляться	<b>Stonehenge</b> ['stoun'hendʒ] — Стоунхендж
<b>to establish</b> — устанавливать, учреждать	<b>the Normans</b> — норманны
<b>ancient</b> — древний	<b>Harold</b> — Гарольд
<b>temple</b> — храм	<b>William the Conqueror</b> — Вильгельм Завоеватель
<b>ignorant</b> — невежественный	<b>Duke of Normandy</b> — Герцог Нормандский
<b>to assume</b> — предполагать, полагать	<b>Hastings</b> ['heɪstɪŋz] — Гастингс, город-графство на берегу Ла-Манша
<b>to invade</b> — вторгаться	<b>Roman Pope</b> — Римский Папа

### Texts

#### I.

Julius Caesar came to Britain in 54 BC. A hundred years later the Romans came again, and this time they stayed for four hundred years (43 AD until 410 AD).

When the Romans came to Britain, they found it a land of forest and swamp. In order to move their troops rapidly, they made roads. Camps for soldiers were constructed at road junctions. These sites of old Roman camps became centres of trade. Their houses and roads, castles and theatres can still be seen.

There are many examples of Roman influence, it is evident in names of towns ending with: -caster, -chister, because "castrum" in Latin denoted a fort, and "castra" — a camp. The Romans were fond of warm water baths, and the city of Bath owes its origin to the possession of naturally warmed spring.

The Romans didn't need carpets — they had central heating under the floors of their houses. So they decorated their floors with mosaics. The mosaic of a dancing girl was found in a Roman villa in Susses. It is over 1,700 years old.

One of the oldest buildings of the Roman period is the lighthouse, or Pharos, at Dover.

When the Romans had departed (in 410 BC) the English swept over the country and destroyed almost all the civilization which Rome had established. The Anglo-Saxons disliked living in towns. They lived in small agricultural villages, and in houses mainly built of wood.

In the 11th century England was invaded by the Normans. This was the fifth and the last invasion of England. The Norman invasion changed both the history and the language of Britain.

When King Edward the Confessor\* of England died, he had no sons, and the Anglo-Saxon Earl, Harold was chosen to

\* King Edward the Confessor — *король Эдвард Исповедник*

the throne. William, the Duke of Normandy who was a distant relative of the late king also claimed the English throne. In 1066 he began to gather an army to invade Britain. At the end of September William's army set up a camp at Hastings. He promised land to all who would support him and many Englishmen joined his army. William also asked the Roman Pope for his support promising to strengthen his power over England. And the Pope gave his support.

The battle between the Normans and the Anglo-Saxons took place on the 11th of October 1066 at Hastings. The Normans outnumbered the Anglo-Saxon forces and were better armed. The Anglo-Saxon had a small cavalry mainly Harold's bodyguard, and were poorly armed.

The battle lasted all day. The English fought hard but by late afternoon the Normans were winning. Harold's two brothers died fighting and then Harold was killed. The battle ended, the English forces withdrew. William became King of England, and because he conquered England he is called William the Conqueror.

The Norman invaders brought with them Norman architecture (you can still see a number of Norman churches and castles), and the Norman-French language, which over the years mixed with Anglo-Saxon to form the modern English language.

## II.

Two thousand years before the Romans came to Britain the ancient inhabitants started building Stonehenge in Wiltshire. The newest parts of it were built in about 1400 BC — more than three thousand years ago. It is the oldest of Britain's famous monuments. Nobody knows exactly what it was, or who built it, but it must have taken them a very long time. Huge stones weighing up to 30 tons were brought from hills 20 miles away, and the smaller ones 200 miles from Wales. Archaeologists used to think that Stonehenge was just a temple

for religious ceremonies. Some people say it was a kind of clock, or calendar for working out the movements of the sun and the moon.

If Stonehenge and the many smaller stone circles in Britain and France really are calendars, we have to change our ideas about ancient people. They weren't primitive or ignorant as it is sometimes assumed.

### ☺☺ Dialogue

#### IN A TRAIN FOR HASTINGS

*Joan:* This train's very crowded. I hope we don't have to stand in the corridor. We should have reserved seats.

*Steve:* There'll be room up the front. Come on up the platform. Look, there are two seats there. Let's get in.

*Joan:* Oh, but there's an umbrella on that seat. Excuse me, is this seat taken?

*Passenger 1:* So sorry, no. That's my umbrella. I'll move it.

*Joan:* Thanks. Phew, it's hot in here. Do you mind if I open a window?

*Pass. 1:* Not at all. Go ahead.

*Steve:* Take your coat off, Joan. I'll put it up on the luggage rack. Excuse me, may I put this up on the rack?

*Pass. 1:* Of course. Please do.

*Joan:* I suppose we're on the right train, Steve? (to passenger) Excuse me, do you know if this train goes straight through to Hastings, or do we have to change?

*Pass. 1:* I've no idea, I'm afraid. I'm only going to Tunbridge Wells.

*Pass. 2:* You're all right. It's a through train. We're due at Hastings at 10.30.

*Joan:* Oh, thank you. Actually, we want to see the Abbey on the site where the Battle of Hastings was fought. Do you know what time it opens?

*Pass. 2:* I'm sorry, I don't know at all. Battle Abbey is six miles from Hastings, you know. But this train stops at Battle.

You should get out there. You can get a later train at Hastings — it's quite a nice seaside place even in winter.

Steve: Thanks, we'll do that, Joan, I think I've just got time to go and buy a paper.

### Exercises

#### I. Finish the following:

1. Julius Caesar came to Britain ... . 2. The Romans found Britain ... . 3. To move their troops they ... and constructed ... . 4. You can still see ... . 5. The city of Bath owes its origin ... . 6. The Romans didn't need carpets because ... . 7. When the Romans had departed, the English destroyed ... . 8. The oldest of Britain's famous monuments is ... . 9. Some people say Stonehenge was ... . 10. Archaeologists thought it was ... . 11. We have to admit that ancient people weren't ... . 12. The Norman conquest was the last ... . 13. The Anglo-Saxon earl, Harold ... . 14. William, a distant relative of the king ... . 15. William promised the Roman Pope ... . 16. The battle took place ... . 17. The Normans won the battle and William...

#### II. Use the right word:

invasion; invaders (2); invaded; influence; king; throne; a fight (2); duke; forces; customs; conquerors; well-armed; claimed; promised; lasted (2); killed; won; withdraw; strengthen.

In the second half of the 11th century England was ... by a Norman ... , William by name. He ... the English ... , and landed with his army in the South of England. The ... lasted all day, but finally the Normans ... and the Anglo-Saxons had to ... . King Harold was ... and London was forced to open its gates to the ... . William became ... of England and ... to give the old rights and ... to the Anglo-Saxons. But he did not keep his promise. Many Anglo-Saxons ran away into forests and started ... against the foreign ... . It was the last ... of Britain and it

had a great ... on the formation of the modern English language. The ... of the local population of England against the ... for several years, but William took measures to ... his power.

#### III. Make up correct statements:

1. Stonehenge was built	the 1st century AD
2. The Celts spread across Europe	1st — 5th centuries AD
3. The Romans conquered Britain	from the 6th to the 3d centuries BC
4. Britain was a Roman province	the middle of the 5th century
5. Anglo-Saxons invaded Britain	between 1900 and 1600 BC
6. The Kingdom of England was strengthened under Alfred the Great	the 11th century
7. The Danes invaded Britain	the 8th century
8. Another Danish invasion of Britain took place	the 9th century
9. England was invaded by the Normans	the end of the 10th century

#### IV. Answer the following questions:

1. When did the Romans invade Britain? 2. What traces did the Romans leave in Britain? 3. What place names in Britain today are examples of Roman influence? 4. What is the origin of the city of Bath? 5. What did the English do after the Romans had departed? 6. What kind of houses did the English prefer? 7. What is Stonehenge? 8. What was it used for? 9. What was the reason for the Norman invasion of Britain? 10. Why did many Anglo-Saxons support William? 11. Why did the Anglo-Saxons lose the battle at Hastings? 12. What influence did the Normans have on Britain?

#### V. Use the verb in the Principle Clause in the Past Tense and make all the necessary changes:

A. 1. She says that she works five days a week. 2. I know they love classical music. 3. We believe that it is true. 4. I'm



afraid I don't understand the problem. 5. The guide says there is a medieval castle on the top of the hill. 6. He says he can't speak French.

B. 1. We know that we are going to begin our work tomorrow. 2. I think it is beginning to rain. 3. She says she is washing up and her sister is watching television. 4. They say it is snowing heavily and a strong wind is blowing. 5. He says they are going to Britain for summer holidays.

C. 1. I think they have returned from the trip. 2. They say they have made a lot of pictures of New York. 3. We know you have travelled all over America. 4. She says she has made some interesting new friends. 5. He is sorry he hasn't been able to pass the exam. 6. I'm sure they have received our letter. 7. She doesn't remember how long they have been learning English. 8. She says it has been raining ever since morning.

D. 1. He says he wrote the letter last week. 2. Mother says my brother returned an hour ago. 3. They say there were a lot of questions after the lecture. 4. I know he had an accident a couple of days ago. 5. I suppose I saw them at the theatre. 6. She writes that they visited Liverpool, the home town of the Beatles, last summer. 7. I'm sure you had a wonderful holiday in St. Petersburg. 8. The children say they had a very good time with their granny.

E. 1. I suppose my sister will meet me at the airport. 2. I'm afraid our plan won't work. 3. Mother says we shall have lunch in a few minutes. 4. The weather forecast says the weather will change for the better next week. 5. We hope we'll be able to swim in the sea. 6. I'm sure you'll enjoy the party. 7. She says her brother will graduate in a year. 8. I suppose the work won't take us the whole day. 9. They don't know when they will return.

F. 1. The teacher says the students will be writing their paper for an hour and a half. 2. I think I'll be looking through these papers after dinner tonight. 3. He says he'll be preparing for his report in the library. 4. I know you'll be watching television the whole evening. 5. I'm afraid they'll be quarrelling again. 6. I don't know what I'll be doing tonight. 7. We know they'll be waiting for us at the bus stop.

G. 1. She says she will have finished the translation by the evening. 2. Jane hopes her friend will have received her message by that time. 3. I'm sure the examination will have ended by 2 o'clock. 4. I promise we'll have cleaned the house by mother's return. 5. The repairmen say they'll have finished repairing the house by the end of the season. 6. The teacher says by the end of the year we'll have learned a lot.

H. 1. He says he will leave as soon as he gets the money. 2. I'm sure they'll come to the party if we invite them. 3. She says she'll go out only when she has done her homework. 4. Kate writes that she'll send us a card after she has had a sightseeing tour of London. 5. I'm afraid you'll not recognize me when we meet. 6. Mother says we'll go out to the country if it's not raining. 7. I hope she will help me if I ask her. 8. She is afraid she won't be able to marry him before he has found a good hours.

#### VI. Use Indirect Speech:

1. Tom said, "I have an exam tomorrow morning." 2. She said, "I divided my time between study and sport." 3. I thought, "I'll have to buy a lot of books when I go to the university next year." 4. He said, "At Cambridge I developed a taste for Norman architecture." 5. She complained, "I haven't spent enough time in the library." 6. Kate said, "I've been to Britain many times." 7. They said, "We are going to get married in May." 8. He said, "I don't know what I'm going to do

tomorrow." 9. Father said, "The telegram was sent yesterday." 10. I said, "I'll stay here till tomorrow." 11. The guide said, "I'll show you around the town if you have time after lunch." 12. She said, "Jack will graduate this spring."

### VII. Make Indirect Questions:

Use: I wondered  
I wanted to know  
I asked

A. 1. Is Jane from England? 2. Did she study at Oxford University? 3. Do you have classes five days a week? 4. Have you seen Stonehenge? 5. Did you learn History of England at school? 6. Are you going to leave for Kiev? 7. Has the train arrived? 8. Have you been waiting for me long? 9. Will she be coming soon? 10. Have the children been taken out for a walk? 11. Are there any questions? 12. Do I have to tell the truth?

B. 1. What are you doing? 2. What countries has he visited? 3. What did the teacher tell you? 4. What time will the concert begin? 5. Where can I buy this book? 6. Why didn't you come to the party last night? 7. What language is he going to learn next year? 8. What cities of the US would you like to see? 9. How many pages will you have translated by the evening? 10. How much have you been able to find out? 11. How many bedrooms are there in their new house? 12. How far is it from the centre of Moscow?

### VIII. Turn the following requests and commands into Reported Speech:

Use: He asked  
He told me  
He ordered  
He demanded

1. Come and see us one day. 2. Speak louder, please. 3. Call the doctor at once. 4. Bring my books tomorrow. 5. Stop talking. 6. Leave the room. 7. Don't put on the light. 8. Don't be angry. 9. Don't touch my things. 10. Don't forget to buy some bread. 11. Can you show me the way out? 12. Could you do me a favour?

### IX. Reproduce the following in the Indirect Speech:

#### A.

*Mr. Bruce:* I'm tired, I need a holiday.  
*Mrs. Bruce:* We're going to Egypt next month.  
*Mr. B.:* We went to Egypt last year.  
*Mrs. B.:* Yes, we did, and I enjoyed it, didn't you?  
*Mr. B.:* I don't like to see the same places more than once. Besides, there are so many places we haven't visited.  
*Mrs. B.:* Where exactly would you like to go?  
*Mr. B.:* Australia, or New Zealand, for example.  
*Mrs. B.:* Oh, no, I'm afraid we can't afford it.  
*Mr. B.:* Why can't we, we've been saving the whole year to have a good time in summer.  
*Mrs. B.:* All right, all right, we're going to Australia.

#### B.

— Hello, Mum.  
— Hello, Cristie. You sound distressed, what's the matter?  
— Oh, David is crying again. I don't know what to do.  
— You mustn't complain, when you were a baby you were crying day and night.  
— But, mother, I'm so tired, I haven't slept a wink this night, and there're a lot of things to do about the house.  
— What time is George coming?  
— He isn't coming till late at night.  
— Don't be alarmed, dear, I'll come and help you.

## C.

- Where is Helen?
- I don't know, I haven't seen her today.
- When did you last see her?
- We spoke to each other yesterday and she promised to come.
- I'm sorry, we can't start without her.
- Shall I phone her?
- Yes, please.

## D.

- Boss:* Miss Blake, telephone Mr. Brown, please.  
*Miss Blake:* Yes, sir.  
*Boss:* And copy my report at the conference.  
*M. B.:* Yes, sir.  
*Boss:* Oh, and Miss Blake, don't forget to mail all the letters.  
*M. B.:* No, I won't, sir.  
*Boss.:* And order a table for two at the restaurant, please.  
*M. B.:* Yes, sir.  
*Boss:* And don't use the office phone for personal calls.  
*M. B.:* No, I won't, sir.

\* \* \*

- Boss:* Well, Miss Blake, have you telephoned Mr. Brown?  
*M. B.:* Yes, I have.  
*Boss:* And have you copied my report?  
*M. B.:* Yes, I have.  
*Boss:* Have you mailed all the letters?  
*M. B.:* Yes, sir, I mailed them an hour ago.  
*Boss:* And have you ordered a table at the restaurant?  
*M. B.:* Yes, sir.  
*Boss:* Has anybody called?  
*M. B.:* Yes, sir, your wife, she asked you to call her.

X. Use the correct tense and voice form of the verbs:

## A. The 4th of July — Independence Day

The 4th of July (to be) the biggest national holiday in the USA. It (to celebrate) as the birthday of the country. On July the 4th, 1776, when the American colonies (to fight) against Britain, the Continental Congress (to adopt) a resolution which (to come) to be known as the Declaration of Independence.

In fact, the Declaration of Independence (to be) a letter of the Continental Congress to the King of Great Britain. Thomas Jefferson (to write) to the king that the people of America (not to want) to pay taxes if they (not to allow) to decide how to spend the taxes. But the Declaration (to be) just a letter, it (not to make) the American people independent of Britain. Though the Declaration (to adopt) by the 4th of July, it (not to sign) by the members of the Congress till August the 2nd, 1776.

The Congress (to hold) its meetings in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. The members (to meet) in Independence Hall. When the people of Philadelphia (to hear) that the Congress (to vote) to send the Declaration to the king they (to ring) a big bell on the Tower of Independence Hall — the "Liberty Bell" — and (to celebrate) their first "Fourth of July." The bell still (to ring) to celebrate Independence Day. The Americans (to march) in parades. They (to decorate) the graves of their dead soldiers. In the evening in parks and fields fireworks (to shoot off).

B. Recently Nigel's boss (to promise) him promotion. So, for obvious reasons Nigel (to invite) the Greens to Christmas dinner. It (to decide) to roast turkey for the guests.

On Friday evening the guests (to arrive). Although Charlotte (to spend) most of the day shopping and cooking, she (to look) lovely. After the first course (to eat) she (to go) into the kitchen to get the roast turkey which (to take out) of the oven just before

the soup (to serve). But something terrible (to happen). Smudge, their cat, (to enjoy) his own Christmas dinner. In fact he already (to eat) most of one leg and now (to start) on the other. Charlotte immediately (to kick) him out into the garden and then (to wonder) what she (to do) next. She certainly (not to want) to ruin the meal which (to take) her hours to prepare, so she (to decide) to keep quiet. She (to cut) the turkey in the kitchen so that no one (to see) the damage that Smudge (to do).

The turkey (to be) a great success, so by the time Charlotte (to go) into the kitchen to make coffee she completely (to forgive) Smudge, and (to open) the back door to let him in again. But something even worse than before (to happen). There, on the doorstep, (to be) the dead body of poor Smudge. Charlotte (to shock), as she (to realize) what (to happen). Smudge obviously (to die) of food poisoning ... and their guests (to eat) turkey too!

They (to tell) their guests the whole story. They all (to agree) to go to the hospital. After the unpleasant operation in the hospital they (to go) in through the back gate to pick up the body of Smudge but the cat (to disappear).

#### *XI. Use prepositions or adverbs where necessary:*

##### A.

##### **London Clubs**

The word "club" is used ... many languages. A club is usually connected ... some sport or ... social activities. But ... London it sometimes has a peculiar English meaning. When you hear a man talking ... "my club," you can be sure he means one ... the West End clubs ... which he is a member. Most ... them are located ... the same small area which is known as St. James's.

Most ... the clubs are old. The oldest was opened ... 1693 and was a coffee house. ... the end ... the 17th century and ... the first half ... the 18th century, coffee houses were visited ... people as places ... social meetings and they were ... Vienna and other European capitals. Coffee houses were also used as

places ... gambling. This early type ... club was usually started ... one man as a money-making venture. The names ... some ... these club owners are preserved today. ... the 19th century the one-man club owners gradually disappeared and were replaced ... a new type where members themselves ran and financed their clubs. The development ... the social club was seen ... the 19th century. The new clubs were managed ... committees ... members, and members ... all clubs had to be elected. All the clubs are very proud ... their history and traditions. Membership ... the clubs is carefully selected.

B. Oxford is one ... the oldest universities ... Britain. The first ... its colleges was founded ... 1249. The university has 34 colleges and ... twelve thousand students, many ... them ... other countries. There were no women students ... Oxford ... 1878, when the first women's college opened. Now women study ... most colleges.

Oxford is, of course, famous ... its first-class education as well as its beautiful buildings. Some ... the most intelligent men and women ... the country live and work here.

It is not easy to get a place ... Oxford University to study ... degree. But outside the university there are many private colleges ... which it is easy to enrol.

#### *XII. Use articles if necessary:*

##### A.

##### **The Government of the United States**

... Washington, ... Lincoln, ... Eisenhower, ... Kennedy — some of ... great names of ... American history, ... names of her Presidents.

These days, ... American President is one of ... most powerful men in ... world. He can make ... war, or ... peace. He can touch ... lives of ... millions in many different countries. But ... President cannot do just what he wants. ... Congress must agree first.

... United States consists of 50 states. ... government of ... whole country (... "federal" government) works from ... Washington, ... capital city. This is where ... Congress is based. ... Congress consists of ... Senate and ... House of Representatives.

... Americans choose ... new President every four years. ... election is ... great occasion. It is ... serious business, but ... Americans make sure it is ... fun too.

## B. April Fool's Day

... children throughout ... English-speaking countries look forward to ... April ... 1st, April Fool's Day. By ... tradition it is ... day on which ... jokes are played. ... children might decide to wake their parents with ... news that ... house is on ... fire, or that some other disaster has occurred. When they see ... looks of ... alarm on their victims' faces, they shout, "April Fool."

At ... school serious work is practically forgotten as ... children try to pin ... notices on one another's backs. ... notices say ... things like "Kick me," or "I'm a fool." ... teachers have to be particularly careful or they too might find themselves walking around ... silly sign on their backs.

On this day of national good humour, ... television and radio service joins in ... fun. Once they told ... story of ... building that had been built upside down by ... mistake. They showed ... example of ... modern architecture which actually did look better when it was turned ... other way. Many people must have been fooled, and perhaps ... architect himself was given ... food for ... thought.

## XIII. Translate into English:

1. Стоунхендж был построен задолго до того, как римляне пришли в Англию. 2. Вильгельм обещал, что он даст землю всем, кто присоединится к его армии. 3. Древние люди верили, что небом, солнцем, луной, землей и морем управляют боги. 4. После ухода римлян англо-саксы разрушили почти все здания, которые

построили римляне. 5. Гид объяснил нам, что битва при Гастингсе — одно из важнейших исторических событий Британии. 6. Америка была открыта задолго до знаменитого путешествия Колумба. 7. Бедняки знали, что Робин Гуд всегда их защитит. 8. Кук обнаружил, что местные жители Новой Зеландии прибыли когда-то с других островов в Тихом океане. 9. Капитан Артур писал, что Австралия — самое красивое место из всех, которые он когда-либо видел. 10. Она спросила, откуда произошло название этого города. 11. Мы спросили американцев, отмечают ли они День 8 Марта. 12. Он поинтересовался, сможет ли он купить пластинку с шотландской народной музыкой в этом магазине. 13. Студенты спросили, на какой улице расположен музей Шерлока Холмса. 14. Америго Веспуччи доказал, что земли, которые открыл Колумб, были частью Нового континента. 15. Туристы узнали, что на следующий день они поедут в Стрэдфорд-на-Эвоне, родину Шекспира. 16. Я спросила, где я могу купить шотландскую юбку, и мне объяснили, что шотландские юбки носят только мужчины. 17. Нас просили не разговаривать громко в музее. 18. Мама не велела детям выходить на улицу, пока она не придет. 19. Нас спросили, не хотим ли мы поехать с ними на экскурсию по городу. 20. Мы попросили лектора, чтобы он рассказал нам об истории этого города.

XIV. Read texts A and B and speak a) about the Scots and some of their traditions; b) some other national customs which still exist:

## A. EDINBURGH

Edinburgh is Scotland's capital, and one of the most beautiful cities in Britain. The heart of Edinburgh is the thousand-year-old castle, where the kings of Scotland lived for centuries.

Edinburgh has a busy cultural life. Every year, in September, the International Festival takes place. Musicians,

actors and singers come from all over the world and thousands of visitors fill the city. In the evening, the opera house, the theatres and the concert halls are full. In cafés and pubs, small groups sing, act and read poetry.

The castle is at its best in Festival time. Every night there is a magnificent military "Tattoo." Highland soldiers wearing "kilts" play the bagpipes, and march to the music.

Tartans, the patterns of the kilts, have an interesting history. Since the 15th century, each Scottish family (or "clan") has worn its own tartan as a kind of badge. It was a useful way of recognizing people, especially in times of war. Many tartans date only from the 19th century, worn on special occasions, have light, bright colours. "Hunting" tartans are usually green, blue or brown.

**B.** There are over a thousand different tartans. Nobody really knows how old they are. Some people claim that the Scots were wearing tartan in Roman times. But some people think that the present patterns are only two or three hundred years old.

Originally, only the Highlanders wore tartan; now all Scots, Highlanders and Lowlanders, and Scots all over the world, wear tartan. Each tartan belongs to a particular clan. A clan is all the people with a particular surname. For example, Macdonald. But only the men really are meant to wear kilts.

A kilt isn't the same as a skirt. It's made quite differently, and wraps over. A Scotsman in a kilt is the finest sight in the world. The interesting thing is that the kilt is one of the few national costumes in Europe which is still worn every day. Lots of countries have national costumes which people wear just on special occasions. But in Scotland you can see plenty of men wearing the kilt. They say kilts are much better than trousers for wearing in the country, and much more comfortable in the rain.

*XV. Read and render the text. Say what you know about contemporary groups and musicians in Britain.*

The British love of music is often unfamiliar to foreigners, probably because there are few great British composers. The most famous is Henry Purcell (1658—1695). Sir Edward Elgar (1857—1934) is known for his choral and orchestral works, some of which have been made more widely known by the famous violinist Yehudi Menuhin. Benjamin Britten (1913—1976), a composer with a very personal style, has become world famous for such works as "Peter Grimes" and "Billy Bud."

In recent years there has been a great revival of folk music, and groups specializing in its performance have sprung up all over Britain.

Present-day concern with music is shown by the existence of something like a hundred summer schools in music, which cater for all grades of musicians, from the mere beginner to the skilled performer. There are also important musical festivals held in many towns. Pop-music festivals draw thousands of people, especially young people. In the great cities there are resident world-famous orchestras and from all over the world great performers come to play or sing in Britain. In many towns there are brass bands, and the players are often such people as miners or members of the local fire brigade, for music in Britain is not just a highbrow interest\*, it is above all democratic.

*XVI. Read the text and answer the questions:*

- 1) What makes the US a multinational state?
- 2) In what way does it differ from Russia as a multinational state?

#### A NATION OF IMMIGRANTS

The United States has often been called "a nation of immigrants." There are two good reasons for this. First, the

\* not just a highbrow interest — не только для избранных

country was settled, built, and developed by generations of immigrants and their children. Secondly, even today America continues to take in more immigrants than any other country in the world. It is not surprising, therefore, that the United States is counted among the most heterogeneous\* societies in the world. Many different cultural traditions, ethnic sympathies, national origins, racial and religious group make up "we the people."

But America is not simply a collection of different immigrant groups and ethnic or religious loyalties. It is not true (as is often stated) that there are more Irish, more Germans, and more Puerto Ricans living in New York City than there are in Dublin, Frankfurt, or San Juan. Nor do most New Yorkers think of themselves primarily as Jews, Negroes, Puerto Ricans, Italians, Germans, or Irishmen. Rather, among the Americans in New York, there are many who (or whose ancestors) originally came from Africa, Ireland, Germany, or Puerto Rico, and so on.

In fact, 94 percent of all Americans today were born in the United States. As a result, those tens of millions of Americans who proudly acknowledge their ethnic roots are still "more American" than they are Irish, Italian, German, or Puerto Rican. What they have in common is more significant than that makes them, as Americans, different from one another.

*XVII. Read and a) render the text in English; b) speak about the discovery of some continent:*

#### THE DISCOVERY OF AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND

Australia and New Zealand were discovered in 1642 by the Dutch explorer, Tasman. It was thought that they were part of a Great South Land in which civilized human beings lived. Scientists in Britain wanted to find out if this land really existed, so in 1768 they sent an expedition to the southern seas to

\* heterogeneous [ˌhɛtərəʊ'dʒɪniəs] — *разнородный*

look for it. The leader of the expedition was captain James Cook, one of the greatest explorers of all time. He took with him on board his ship, "Endeavour," scientists and artists whose job was to make a record\* of all the strange things they might discover on the voyage. Cook never discovered the mysterious South Land, but he discovered the east coast of New Zealand, and he raised the Union Jack\*\* to claim it for Britain.

Cook and his companions came face to face with the Maoris, the native people who had come to New Zealand from the South Pacific Islands in the 14th century.

After leaving New Zealand, Cook sailed northwest. He believed that with luck he might find another land, and he did it nineteen days later. It was Australia. They landed in a bay on the northeast coast which is today part of Sydney, and to their astonishment they saw plants and creatures that no white man had ever seen before: kangaroos and wombats and koalas, brilliantly coloured birds and butterflies, and grey-green eucalyptus trees of all kinds. Cook named the place "Botany Bay." They also met the dark-skinned Aborigines. The crew were scornful of them and called them animals, but Cook admired their simple way of life. He wrote in his diary: "With all our possessions and comfortable way of life, we do not seem as happy as they are."

Ten years later, Australia's first settlers landed in Sydney Harbour, which was only a few miles up the coast from Botany Bay. Captain Arthur Phillip, the commander of the little fleet, wrote: "We had the satisfaction of finding the finest harbour in the world." Not many people would disagree with him today. These first settlers were convicts, women as well as men, who had been sent to this wild land as a punishment. There were also soldiers to guard them. Only 10 percent of Australians are

\* to make a record — (эд.) *записывать, вести записи*

\*\* the Union Jack — *государственный флаг Великобритании*

descended from convicts, most of whom were not really criminals. There were rebellious Irishmen, English labourers who had formed unlawful trade unions, girls who had stolen half a loaf of bread for their starving children.

By 1840 the borders of six separate colonies had been decided. These colonies stretched right round the coast from Queensland in the northeast to Western Australia in the far southwest. Each colony was ruled by a governor appointed by the British Government. In 1902 the six colonies formed a confederation of states which was called the Commonwealth of Australia.

New Zealand was colonized much later. The first colony of British settlers did not arrive until 1840, and twelve years later they were given self-rule. Like Australia, New Zealand became an independent country within the British Commonwealth and Empire.

*XVIII. Read and reproduce the jokes, using Indirect Speech:*

1. **Skill**

Two "pavement artists" in the West End of London were boasting to one another about their skill in drawing.

"Do you know," said one, "I drew a sixpence on the pavement one day, and a beggar nearly broke his finger nails trying to pick it up."

"That's nothing to what I did," said the other. "I painted a pound of sausages on a paving stone and it was so natural that a dog ate half the stone before he found out his mistake."

2. **A Useful Echo**

An American and a Scot were walking near the foot of one of the Scottish mountains. The Scot, wishing to impress the visitor, produced a famous echo to be heard in that place. When the echo returned clearly after nearly four minutes, the Scot, turning to the American said: "There my men, you can't show anything like that in your country, eh?"

"Oh, I don't know," said the American. "I think I can do better than that. In my camp in the Rockies, when I go to bed I just look out of the window and call out: "Time to get up!" and eight hours afterwards the echo comes back and wakes me."

3. **Music — The Life Saver**

Once Mark Twain was sitting at a dinner party next to a well-known pianist. He said to him:

"It will interest you as a pianist that my life was once saved by a piano when I was a boy. We had a terrible flood in my home town. The water even reached the upper story where I was with my father. Without hesitation my father sat on a big chest of drawers, and floating down the river reached safely on the bank."

"Well, and you?" asked the pianist.

"I accompanied him on the piano."

4. **What the Red Indian Thought**

One day a lady visited an American school and spoke to the children about Christopher Columbus. She told them what a good thing it was that he had discovered America, so that they could all go to such a fine school. Did not everybody think so? "Oh, yes!" shouted all the children. Only a little boy in a corner looked most unhappy and said nothing.

The lady turned to him asking kindly, "Don't you think so, too?" "No, I don't," he answered, "I'm a Red Indian."

5. Charles Dickens used to tell a story of a young lady, who, being loved by five young men, was advised "to jump overboard, and marry the man who jumped in after her." So the next morning, the five lovers being on deck and looking very devotedly at the young lady, she plunged into the sea. Four of the lovers immediately jumped in after her. When the young lady and the four lovers were out again, she asked the captain:



"What am I to do with them now, they are so wet?"

"Take the dry one," was the answer.

And the young lady did so and married him.

### XIX. Things to do:

#### 1. Say whether the following statements are right or wrong:

- 1) Elizabeth I was Queen of England before Elizabeth II ascended the throne.
- 2) The Romans invaded Britain in the first century AD.
- 3) Columbus was the first to discover America.
- 4) When captain Cook landed in Australia, he found a civilized nation there.
- 5) The islands of Cuba and Haiti were discovered by Vasco da Gama.
- 6) Tartans are Welsh national hats.
- 7) Britain began to colonize the American continent in the 18th century.
- 8) Potatoes were brought to Europe from China.
- 9) The Celts celebrated Christmas in June.
- 10) After the Norman Conquest the nobles of England spoke French.
- 11) The word "street" is of Greek origin.
- 12) There are six states in Australia.
- 13) Puerto Rico is part of the USA.
- 14) "Canterbury Tales" were written by Geoffrey Chaucer.

#### 2. Speak about:

- 1) a famous historical event in the history of an English-speaking country;
- 2) most important historical events which influenced the formation of the English language;
- 3) an important event of the history of Russia;
- 4) the history of your native town (district of Moscow);
- 5) any historical novel you read.

3. Study the outline of Shakespeare's life and make up his biography. Ask your partner questions.

#### WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE (1564—1616)

Born at Stratford-upon-Avon, son of prosperous tradesman.

Educated at Stratford Grammar School.

Married Anne Hathaway 1582.

Joined company of actors in 1589 at Globe Theatre in London. 1593 Earl of Southampton became his patron.

Probably wrote 36 plays — 18 published during his lifetime.

Also sonnets and other poems.

Wrote popular comedies, such as Twelfth Night, Much Ado About Nothing, Midsummer Night's Dream, Taming of the Shrew, As You Like It.

Wrote many historical plays, such as: Henry IV (Parts 1 and 2), Hamlet, Othello, Macbeth, King Lear, Antony and Cleopatra.

Died 1616, age 52. Buried Stratford Churchyard.

Shakespeare's vocabulary was 20,000 words.

#### 4. Guess who is meant here:

She is one of the most popular women in Great Britain. She is a chemist. She was born in 1925 and grew up in Granham, Lincolnshire. Her parents were grocers. She was keen on science and when she was 17 years old, she entered Oxford University after finishing Grammar School. She got married soon. After graduation from the University she got interested in politics. She joined the Conservative party. In 1973 she became Minister of Education. She worked and lived at No. 10 Downing Street. She is fond of classical music, she enjoys doing sports, especially tennis and swimming. She likes poetry very much. She is fond of cooking when she has some spare time. She cares for her family very much. She often trav-

els and meets many interesting and well-known people all over the world.

5. Write a short essay on the history of Russia, England, USA, Australia or other English-speaking countries.

6. Tell your groupmates anecdotes about famous English or American people.

*XX. Poems and songs to enjoy:*

1. **Those Evening Bells**

*Thomas Moore*

Those evening bells, those evening bells,  
How many a tale their music tells,  
Of youth, and home, and that sweet time  
When last I heard their soothing chime.  
Those joyous hours are passed away;  
And many a heart that then was gay,  
Within the tomb now darkly dwells,  
And hears no more those evening bells.  
And so 'twill be when I am gone:  
That tuneful peal will still ring on,  
While other bards will walk these dells,  
And sing your praise, sweet evening bells!

2.

**Auld Lang Syne**

Should auld acquaintance be forgot,  
And never brought to mind?  
Should auld acquaintance be forgot,  
And days of auld lang syne?

*Chorus:* For auld lang syne, my dear, for auld syne,  
We'll take a cup of kindness yet for auld lang syne.

And here's a hand, my trusty friend  
And give a hand of thine;  
We'll take a cup of kindness yet  
For auld lang syne.

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING

### THE TURNIP COMES BACK

#### I

It is winter. It is very cold. The White Rabbit has nothing to eat. He opens the door of his house. Oh, how cold it is! And the fields are white with snow!

"But I must get something to eat," says the White Rabbit. And he runs to the field to get some food.

In the field he sees two turnips\*. The White Rabbit is very happy.

"Two turnips!" he cries. "How good!"

The White Rabbit pulls out\*\* the two turnips and eats one of them. He eats one of the turnips but does not eat the other.

He says, "It is winter. I think the Donkey has nothing to eat. I must take this turnip to him."

#### II

The White Rabbit runs to the Donkey's house. The Donkey is not at home. The White Rabbit opens the door, puts the turnip on the table and goes home.

The Donkey is in the field at this time. He is hungry and wants to get some food there. He looks round and sees a cabbage. He is happy. He takes the cabbage and goes home.

\* turnip — репа

\*\* to pull out — выдернуть

When the Donkey comes home and opens the door, he sees the turnip on the table.

"A turnip! Where does it come from?"

The Donkey sits down at the table and eats his cabbage. Then he looks at the turnip and says, "It is winter. I think the Lamb\* has nothing to eat. I must take the turnip to him."

### III

The Donkey goes to the Lamb's house. But the Lamb is not at home. The Donkey opens the door, puts the turnip on the table and goes away.

The Lamb is in the field at this time. He is hungry and wants to get some food there. He looks round and sees a carrot. He pulls it out and goes home. He is happy.

When the Lamb comes and opens the door, he sees the turnip on the table.

"A turnip! Where does it come from?"

The Lamb sits down and eats his carrot. He looks at the turnip and says, "It is winter. I think the White Rabbit has nothing to eat. I must take the turnip to him."

### IV

The Lamb runs to the White Rabbit's house. The White Rabbit is in bed. He is asleep\*\*. The Lamb puts the turnip on the table and goes home.

In the morning the White Rabbit sees the turnip on the table.

"My turnip!" he cries. "My turnip is back!\*\*\* What good friends I have!"

\* lamb [læm] — ягненок

\*\* He is asleep. — Он спит.

\*\*\* My turnip is back! — Моя репа снова вернулась ко мне!

## SNOW WHITE AND THE SEVEN DWARFS

Once there was a fair young princess named Snow White. She lived in a palace in a faraway kingdom with her cruel step-mother, the Queen.

As time passed, the Queen became jealous of Snow White's beauty. She made the young girl dress in rags and work in the kitchen. In spite of her hard life, Snow White remained good and kind and cheerful.

The wicked Queen had a magic mirror that would answer any question. Every day she stood before the mirror and asked,

"Magic mirror on the wall,  
Who is the fairest one of all?"

And the mirror always answered that the Queen was the fairest in the kingdom.

But the day came at last when the mirror answered,

"Her lips rose red, her hair like night,  
Her skin like snow, her name — Snow White!"

The Queen was furious. "I will destroy the girl!" she shrieked.

The Queen called one of her huntsmen to her.

"Take Snow White deep into the forest and kill her," she ordered.

The unhappy huntsman took Snow White deep into the forest, but he could not kill the lovely princess. He told Snow White of the Queen's wicked plan.

"You must run and hide!" the good man begged her. "You can never come back."

Poor Snow White! She ran through the woods, tripping over branches and roots. The forest was dark and frightening. Strange shadows moved around her, and glowing eyes watched her. She ran and ran.

At last some friendly animals found Snow White and led her to a cottage in a clearing. "Maybe I can stay here," she said hopefully. Snow White knocked on the door.

There was no one at home. Slowly Snow White opened the door.

"Oh, my goodness!" she said when she looked around the tiny room. There were dirty dishes on the table, and dust was everywhere.

"I will tidy up," Snow White said as she started sweeping the floor. "Maybe the people who live here will let me keep house for them."

Snow White worked all afternoon. Then she was so tired that she went upstairs and lay down across several of the little beds she found. Soon she was fast asleep.

Not far away, the seven dwarfs who lived in the cottage had just finished their day's work. They marched home together in a line, Doc, Happy, Grumpy, Sleepy, Sneezy, Bashful and Dopey, and as they walked, they sang,

"Heigh-ho, heigh-ho,  
It's home from work we go..."

When the dwarfs entered the cottage, they were amazed to see how neat and clean it was.

"Someone's been in our house!" said Grumpy. "Maybe it's a ghost or a goblin, and maybe it's still here!"

Upstairs the dwarfs found Snow White fast asleep. Suddenly Sneezy sneezed. Snow White woke with a start. She was amazed to see the seven little men. She explained to the dwarfs that she was in terrible danger. The dwarfs told her that she would be safe if she stayed with them.

Meanwhile the Queen had learned from her magic mirror that Snow White was still alive — and living with the seven dwarfs. The Queen used her evil powers to change herself into an old woman. Then she filled a basket with apples, placing a poisoned one on top. The next morning the evil Queen waited until the dwarfs had left the cottage. Then she spoke to Snow White: "Have an apple, dear," she said. "Taste it." The innocent young princess took one bit and fell to the ground.

The dwarfs learned what had happened from the birds and animals. They ran back to the cottage as fast as they could and saw the old woman running away. They chased the wicked Queen to the top of a rocky cliff. Suddenly the sky grew dark. There was thunder and lightning, splitting the cliff in two. The evil Queen slipped and fell down. She was gone forever.

Snow White was in a deep and endless sleep. The dwarfs were very sad. They built a coffin of glass and gold for the beautiful princess and kept watch over her day and night.

One day a handsome prince came riding by. He had heard stories about the lovely princess asleep in the forest. When he saw Snow White, he fell in love with her. He leaned over her and kissed her. Suddenly Snow White opened her eyes. She smiled at the prince. Love's first kiss had broken the evil spell.

The seven dwarfs danced with joy. Snow White was alive! Soon the dwarfs were waving goodbye. Snow White rode off with the prince to his castle, where they lived happily ever after.

### THE OLD MONKEY AND THE WISE BEAR

Long, long ago there lived a travelling monkey-man. He went from place to place with his monkey and showed the animal's tricks to people.

One evening the man came home and told his wife to send for the butcher the next morning.

The wife asked her husband, "Why do you want me to send for the butcher?"

"The monkey is too old and forgets his tricks. I beat him as hard as I can\* but he doesn't dance well. I must sell him to the butcher."

The woman was very sorry for the little animal and asked her husband not to sell the monkey but the man did not want to listen to her.

\* I beat him as hard as I can — я очень сильно бью его

The monkey was in the neighbouring room and heard every word. He understood what the man wanted to do with him and thought, "How cruel my master is! Didn't I serve him well all my life?\* And now he wants to sell me to the butcher because I'm too old."

The monkey did not know what to do. Then he thought of a wise bear who lived in the forest. He went out of the house and ran to the bear. He found him at home and began his story.

"Good Mr. Bear, I know that you are very wise and you can help me. I'm old now and cannot dance well and my master wants to sell me to the butcher."

"Did your master tell you so?"

"Oh no, he didn't, but he told his wife and I heard it. I know how wise you are. Please, help me."

The bear was pleased to hear such words and decided to help the monkey.

"Hasn't your master a baby?" asked the bear.

"Oh, yes," said the monkey. "He has a little son."

"Doesn't his baby lie near the door in the morning when your mistress begins her work in the house? Well, I shall come to your house and when nobody is near the child, I shall take it and run away with it."

"What then?" said the monkey.

"Don't you understand? Before the mother calls your master, you must run after me and save the child and take it home to its parents."

The monkey thanked the bear and went home. He did not sleep much that night. He got up very early and waited. Soon the master's wife opened the door, put her child near it and began to prepare the breakfast.

The child was playing in the sun. Suddenly there was a noise at the door and a loud cry from the child. The mother

\* Didn't I serve him well all my life? — *Разве я не служил ему верно всю свою жизнь?*

ran out of the kitchen and saw the bear running away with her child. She cried out and then ran into the room where her husband was still sleeping. He sat up slowly and asked what all the noise was about. When the man understood what his wife was telling him, they both ran out. The bear was far away, but they saw the monkey running after the bear as hard as his legs could carry him.\*

The man and his wife did not know how to thank the good monkey when he brought the child back to them.

"There!" said the wife. "This is the animal you want to kill, the animal that saved your child."

"You're right, wife," said the man, carrying the child into the house. "You may send the butcher back when he comes, and now give us all a good breakfast and the monkey too."

When the butcher came they sent him away and the monkey lived the rest of his days in peace and his master never beat him again.

### THE COUNTRY MOUSE AND THE CITY MOUSE

Once upon a time a city mouse visited his cousin in the country. The country mouse shared his simple but wholesome food. Peas, barley, corn, tasty roots were stored in the mouse's home in the field — and another store of food in the big farmer's barn — for when it rained.

"I find the countryside charming," the city mouse said to this openhearted cousin, "but your food is so plain, and your home quite dreary."

"Do come to the city and live with me; we shall play in my luxurious home — and will have a banquet each day — all the delicacies your heart desires."

So they left the blossoming green countryside to the busy, yes, even frightening city. The noise, the traffic, the hurrying,

\* as hard as his legs could carry him — *изо всех сил; со всех ног*

bustling crowds jostling each other was almost too much for the simple country mouse.

"Here we are at last," said the sophisticated city mouse as they entered into a huge towering mansion.

The house was elegant... chandeliers, deep carpets, plush furniture — and a pantry that was full of the very best food ever seen. Swiss cheese, salty bacon, delicious fruit, colourful vegetables, jellies and fresh biscuits — all were there, ready to eat.

Hungry from their long journey, the city mouse and the country mouse began their feast, tasting one mouth-watering bit of food after another.

Suddenly a heavy door slammed, loud footsteps of big boots were heard — the threatening deep purr of an angry cat chilled the air.

"What was that?" the country mouse stuttered.

"Oh, that is the master with his big Siamese cat."

"Goodby, cousin," the country mouse squealed as he leaped through the holes in the pantry wall. "I'm going back to the meadow in the country. I prefer to live with the woods, the tall mountains and the fresh gurgling streams rather than in your exciting city."

#### The Moral

*A simple meal eaten in peace is better than a banquet eaten in fear and trembling.*

#### THE GOOSE AND THE GOLDEN EGG

A farmer lived modestly in the green valley just outside of the village. His wife was kind, industrious and frugal, while the farmer had all the good virtues of industry and hard work. Quietly living a peaceful life they spent most of their time in working the year round in plowing, planting, weeding, harvesting, canning and preserving, then beginning all over again.

One day while gathering eggs in the barn, the farmer discovered a large heavy goose egg that felt like a stone. He was about to throw it away. Evidently somebody was playing a trick.

A glint of sunlight reflected a golden colour from the egg.

"Why, this looks and feels like a golden egg," he said.

Excitedly he called his wife and together they gleefully sang, "We're rich, we're rich!"

Daily they found a golden goose egg which they promptly sold. More and more wealth came to them daily.

Greedily they said, "We'd be TWICE as rich if we got two eggs per day."

"Maybe the goose is full of eggs," whispered the farmer's wife.

So they killed the goose and cut it open. They found, in their greed, that the inside of the goose differed not at all from any other goose.

#### The Moral

*Greed will always kill the goose that lays the golden egg.*

#### SHE WANTS TO HAVE MONEY OF HER OWN

I'm Betty Brown and I'm sixteen. I'm still at school. I like English, needlework and housecraft. We learn cooking and how to look after the house. I often go baby-sitting, but only on Saturdays. Oh! That's the telephone. Excuse me.

"Hallo? Hallo? Yes, Betty Brown is speaking. Saturday next? Yes, Mrs. Smith. That's the 18th of February, isn't it? Yes, thank you, Mrs. Smith, 6 o'clock."

Mrs. Smith is one of Mummy's friends. I don't know her very well, but I know she has two children. Here is Mummy now.

"Mummy, can I go to Mrs. Smith's on Saturday? She and Mr. Smith are going to the cinema, and they want me to baby-sit."

"Till when, Betty?"

"Till ten thirty, Mummy. Oh, please, Mummy, can I go?"

"You're coming home at ten thirty, Betty — don't forget!

Ask Mr. Smith to bring you home in the car."

It's Saturday night, and the time is seven thirty. George and Tom are going to bed. George is seven and Tom is eight. They don't like going to bed.

"Come on, boys! Bedtime!"

"Read us a story, Betty."

I read a story.

"Now, come on, boys! To bed!"

They are in bed at last. It's eight thirty. I go downstairs, into the sitting room. I get out my books. I'm going to do homework. There's a big television set and the programme is very good. And there's a box of chocolates on the table with a note, "Betty, these are for you! — Mrs. Smith."

When the programme is over, there are no more chocolates. It's ten o'clock. I open the door and listen. Silence. I go upstairs. The Smiths' house is big, and there are a lot of doors. Here is the boys' bedroom. I open the door. It is dark inside.

Silence. They are asleep. I go into the room. Where are the boys? The beds are empty!

Of course, Tom and George are playing. They're under the bed! No, they're not under the bed. They're in the bathroom! No, they're not in the bathroom. Perhaps they're in the sitting room? No! In the kitchen? No! Where are they?

Silence. It is ten thirty! I can hear Mr. and Mrs. Smith at the door. Help!

"Hallo, Betty," says Mrs. Smith. "Are the boys asleep? I'm going upstairs to see them."

We go upstairs. As we come to the boys' bedroom, I stop. But Mrs. Smith walks to the next door. She opens that door and looks in.

"Sleeping like angels," she says.

## A SYMPATHETIC HEART

(After O. Henry)

Miss Martha Meacham kept a little bakery on the corner. Miss Martha was forty, she had two false teeth and a sympathetic heart.

Two or three times a week a customer came, and she began to take interest in him. He was a middle-aged man, wearing spectacles and a brown beard. He spoke English with a strong German accent. His clothes were old and worn, but he looked neat and had very good manners. He always bought two loaves of stale bread. Fresh bread was five cents a loaf. Stale ones were two for five. He never bought anything but stale bread.

Once Miss Martha saw a red and brown spot on his fingers. She was sure that he was an artist and very poor. Surely he lived in a garret where he painted pictures and ate stale bread and thought of the good things to eat in Miss Martha's bakery.

Often when Miss Martha sat down to her supper she wished that the artist might share her tasty meal instead of eating the stale bread in his garret. Miss Martha's heart was a sympathetic one.

The customer kept on buying stale bread. Never a cake, never a pie, never any fresh bread. She thought he began to look thinner, and was discouraged. She wanted him to have something good to eat. She wanted to add something good to his bread. But she dared not. She knew the pride of artists.

Miss Martha began to dress better and look after her complexion.

One day the customer came in for his stale loaves. While Miss Martha was getting them for him, a fire engine came past. He ran to the door to look.

Miss Martha seized the opportunity. On the shelf behind her was some fresh butter. With a bread knife Miss Martha made a deep cut in each of the stale loaves, put a great deal of

butter inside and pressed them together. When the customer came back, she was tying the paper round them.

For a long time that day she thought about him and imagined his surprise and pleasure when he discovered the butter in the loaves.

Suddenly the front door bell rang furiously. Somebody was coming in, making a great deal of noise. As Miss Martha hurried to the door, she saw two men come in. One was a young man she had never seen before. The other was her artist. His face was very red, his hat was on the back of his head, his hair in disorder. He shook his fist at Miss Martha shouting, "You, fool, you old cat, you have ruined me!" The young man took him by the arm.

"Come on," he said, "you have said enough," and dragged the angry one to the door.

"I think you ought to be told, ma'am," he said, "what it is all about. This gentleman's name is Blumberger. He is an architect. I work in the same office with him. He has been drawing a plan for a new city hall. It was a prize competition. He finished inking the lines yesterday. You know, an architect always makes his drawing in pencil first. When it's done, he rubs out the pencil lines with stale bread. That's better than Indian rubber. Blumberger has been buying the bread here. Well, today... you know, ma'am, that butter isn't... well, Blumberger's plan isn't good for anything now, except to cut up into sandwiches."

Miss Martha went to the back room. She took off her blue silk blouse and put on the old brown one she had always worn before.

## ADVANTAGES OF CHEESES AS A TRAVELLING COMPANION

(After Jerome K. Jerome)

I remember a friend of mine buying a couple of cheeses at Liverpool. Wonderful cheeses they were, ripe and with a two-hundred-horse-power scent\* about them that might knock a man over at two hundred yards. I was in Liverpool at the time, and my friend asked me to take the cheeses back with me to London. "Oh, with pleasure, dear boy," I said, "with pleasure." I called for the cheeses and took them away in a cab. I put the cheeses on the top, and we started off very slowly, but when we turned the corner the wind began to blow and the horse felt the smell of the cheeses. The horse suddenly started at the rate of nearly four miles an hour. It took two porters and the driver to hold the horse in at the station.

I took my tickets, and marched proudly up the platform, with my cheeses, the people falling back on both sides. The train was crowded and I had to get into a carriage where there were already seven other people. A few moments passed, and then the old gentleman who was sitting next to me began to sniff, saying "Quite oppressive." Then he rose up without another word and went out. And then a stout lady got up, took up a bag and eight parcels and left the carriage. The other passengers sat for a while, until a gentleman in the corner said it put him in mind of a dead body\*\*; and the other passengers tried to get out of the door at the same time.

From Crews I had the compartment all to myself, though the train was crowded. I got off at Euston, took the cheeses down to my friend's house, and when his wife came into the room and smelt round for a moment, she said, "What is it? Tell me the worst. I said, "It's cheeses. Tom bought them in Liverpool, and asked me to bring them up with me."

\* a two-hundred-horse-power scent — запах в двести лошадиных сил

\*\* it put him in mind of a dead body — это напоминало ему о мертвеце



My friend stayed in Liverpool longer than he had planned, and, three days later his wife called on me. She said, "What did Tom say about those cheeses?" I said that he had asked me to keep them in a moist place and that nobody was to touch them. She said, "Nobody's going to touch them. Had he smelt them?" I said he liked them very much.

"You think he would be upset if I gave a man a sovereign to take them away and bury them?" she asked. I answered that I thought he would never smile again. She said, "Do you mind keeping them for him? Let me send them round to you." "Madam," I replied, "for myself I like the smell of cheese, but we must consider others." "Very well, then," said my friend's wife rising, "all I have to say is that I shall take the children and go to an hotel until those cheeses are eaten. I don't want to live any longer in the same house with them."

She kept her word. The hotel bill came to fifteen guineas; and my friend found that the cheeses had cost him eight-and-sixpence a pound. He said he dearly loved a bit of cheese, but it was beyond his means\*, so he decided to get rid of them\*\*. He threw them into the canal; but had to fish them out again, as the bargemen complained. They said it made them feel quite faint. And, after that, he took them one dark night and left them in the parish mortuary\*\*\*. But the coroner discovered them and made a fearful fuss.

My friend got rid of them, at last, by taking them down to a seaside town, and burying them on the beach. It gained the place quite a reputation. Visitors said they had never noticed before how strong the air was, and sick people went there for many years afterwards.

\* it was beyond his means — это было ему не по средствам

\*\* to get rid of smth. — избавиться от чего-л.

\*\*\* mortuary — морг

### FOLLOWING ADVICE\*

(After Jerome K. Jerome)

Not all advice is good. I have a friend who likes to give advice. He is very much interested in the question of rational diet. One day he brought me something in a packet.

"What is it?" I asked.

"Open it and see," he answered.

I opened it and looked, but could not understand what it was.

"It is tea," he explained.

"Oh!" I said. "I thought it was snuff."

"Well, it is not exactly tea\*\*," he continued, "it's a sort of tea. You take one cup of that, only one cup, and you will never take any other sort of tea."

"Thank you," I said. "I shall be very glad to take it."

He was quite right. I saw that very well when I took only one cup. I felt I did not want any other tea after this. In fact, I felt I did not want anything, I only wished to die quietly. He came to see me after a week.

"Do you remember that tea I gave you?" he said.

"Oh, yes, I remember it very well," I answered, "I feel the taste of it in my mouth even now."

"Did it upset you?" he asked.

"Yes, at the time it did," I answered, "but it is all right now."

He thought for a moment.

"You were quite right," he said. "It was snuff, a very special snuff from India."

"I can't say I liked it," I answered.

"I made a mistake," he went on, "I mixed up the packets."

\* to follow (smb's) advice — следовать (чьему-л.) совету

\*\* it is not exactly tea — это не совсем чай

"Well, you will not make another mistake," I said, "at least not with me, because I promise that I shall never follow your advice in the future."

### LOVELY DAY, ISN'T IT?

(After G. Mikes)

When I got out of the plane, I found that there was a slight drizzle. It lasted all day and all next day. Yet at least a dozen people explained to me in those two days that it never rained in Lima. But that was not all what they meant, it never — absolutely never — rained in Lima. They had no seasons here; winter or summer made no difference; the temperature never changed; it was always rather warm and always cloudy; the sun never shone and it never rained. At the end of the second day I asked one of my friends if there was not any contradiction between what the people of Lima said and the fact that it had never stopped raining since my arrival. He was puzzled:

"Rain? What do you mean? Where?"

It was quite clear that one of us was mad. I hoped it was he. I went into meteorological detail in the hope that he, too, had noticed the rain. At last he understood what I meant and he began to laugh:

"But that's not rain..."

"It's very strange," I replied, "but I'll take your word for it. It's not rain."

"Really it isn't," my friend exclaimed. "It's humidity."

The humidity, it was explained to me, is usually around 95 percent in Lima, and is often higher. But before I had time to study the subject and find out when rain is not rain, I got the most terrible lumbago of my life. I had lived twenty years in Britain, the classical centre of rheumatism, without feeling even a twinge, but now I was out of action for days.

My sympathetic friends gave me advice and offered various medicines. At last it helped: modern science as well as Indian magic.

### THE LUNCHEON

(After W. Somerset Maugham)

I saw her at the play and during the interval sat down beside her. It was long since I had last seen her. She addressed me brightly:

"Well, it's many since we first met. How time does fly! Do you remember the first time I saw you? You asked me to luncheon."

Did I remember?

It was twenty years ago and I was living in Paris. I had a small apartment in the Latin Quarter and I was earning money to keep body and soul together\*. She had read a book of mine and had written to me about it. I answered thanking her and presently I received from her another letter saying that she was passing through Paris and would like to have a talk with me; but her time was limited and the only free moment she had was on the following Thursday: she was spending the morning at the Luxembourg and would I give her a little luncheon at Foyot's? (Foyot's was a restaurant so far beyond my means\*\* that I had never even thought of going there. But I was flattered and I was too young to say no to a woman.)

I answered that I would meet her at Foyot's on Thursday at half past twelve. She was not so young as I expected, nor very attractive. It seemed that she wanted to talk about me and I was prepared to be a good listener.

I was shocked when I saw the bill because the cost was much higher than I had thought. "I never eat anything for lun-

\* to keep body and soul together — едва сводить концы с концами

\*\* so far beyond my means — значительно выше моих возможностей

cheon," she said. "I never eat more than one thing. A little fish perhaps. I wonder if they have any salmon." I asked the waiter if there was any. Yes, he said, and I ordered it for my friend. The waiter asked her if she would have something while they were cooking it. "No," she answered. "I never eat more than one thing. Unless you had little caviar. I never mind caviar." My heart sank a little. I knew I could not order caviar, but I could not tell her that. I told the waiter to bring caviar. For myself I ordered the cheapest dish on the menu and that was a mutton chop.

Then came the question of drink. "I never drink anything for luncheon," she said. "Neither do I," I answered quickly. "Except white wine," she said. "These French wines are so light. They are wonderful for digestion."

"What would you like?" I asked. She gave me a bright smile. "My doctor won't let me drink anything but champagne." I got pale. I ordered half a bottle, saying that my doctor had absolutely forbidden me to drink champagne.

"What are you going to drink then?" — "Water."

She ate the caviar and she ate the salmon. She talked of art and literature and music: but I wondered what the bill would come to\*.

"I see that you like to eat a heavy luncheon. I am sure it is a mistake. Why don't you follow my example and just eat one thing?"

"I am going to eat one thing," I said as the waiter came again with the bill. "No, no, I never eat anything for luncheon. Just a bite\*\*. I couldn't possibly eat anything more — unless they had some of those giant asparagus. I should be sorry to leave Paris without having one of them."

My heart sank. I had seen them in the shops and I knew that they were terribly expensive. I ordered them. We waited for the asparagus to be cooked. Panic caught me. It was not a

\* I wondered what the bill would come to — я думал, какой будет счет

\*\* Just a bite. — Только слегка перекусить.

question how much money I should leave for the rest of the month, but whether I had enough to pay the bill.

The asparagus appeared. They were so great. I watched her eating them. At last she finished. "Coffee?" I said. "Yes, just an ice cream and coffee," she answered. I ordered coffee for myself and an ice cream and coffee for her.

The bill came and when I paid it I found that I had no money left. When I walked out of the restaurant I had the whole month before me and not a penny in my pocket. "Follow my example," she said as we shook hands, "and never eat more than one thing for luncheon."

"I'll do better than that," I answered, "I'll eat nothing for dinner tonight!" "Humorist!" she cried, jumping into a cab. "You are quite a humorist!"

But I have had my revenge\* at last. I do not believe that I am a revengeful man, but when the immortal gods take a hand in the matter it is pardonable to observe the result with self-satisfaction\*\*. Today she weighs twenty-one stones (133 kilograms).

## CHRISTMAS

(From "Vile Bodies" by Evelyn Waugh)

(Adam and Nina Littlejohn are spending Christmas with her father, the Colonel. Mr. and Mrs. Florin and Ada work in the Colonel's house.)

Next morning Adam and Nina woke up under Ada's spring of mistletoe to hear the bells ringing for Christmas across the snow. "Come all to church, good people, good people come to church." They had each hung up a stocking the evening before,

\* but I have had my revenge — но я отомстил

\*\* but when the immortal gods take a hand in the matter it is pardonable to observe the result with self-satisfaction — но когда бессмертные боги берутся за дело, то простительно наблюдать за результатом с чувством самоудовлетворения

and Adam had put a bottle of scent and a scent spray into Nina's, and she had put two ties and a new kind of safety razor\* into his. Ada brought them their tea and wished them a happy Christmas. Nina had remembered to get a present for each of the Florins, but had forgotten Ada, so she gave her the bottle of scent.

"Darling," said Ada, "it cost 25 shillings."

After luncheon they went down to see all the decorations in the servants' hall.

This was a yearly custom of some antiquity, and the Florins had prepared for it by hanging paper streamers\*\* from the gas brackets. Ada was having middle-day dinner with her parents who lived among the petrol pumps at Doubting village, so the Florins ate their turkey and plum pudding alone.

The Colonel knocked on the door and said, "May we come in, Mrs. Florin?"

"That you may, sir, and welcome," said Mrs. Florin.

Then Adam and Nina and the Colonel admired the decorations and handed over their presents wrapped in tissue paper. Then the Colonel said, "I think we should take a glass of wine together."

Florin opened a bottle of sherry which he had brought up that morning and poured out the glasses, handing one first to Nina, then to Mrs. Florin, then to the Colonel, then to Adam, and, finally, taking one for himself.

"My very best wishes to you, Mrs. Florin," said the Colonel, raising his glass, "and to you, Florin. The years go by, and we none of us get any younger, but I hope and trust that there are many Christmases in store for us yet. Mrs. Florin certainly doesn't look a day older than when she first came here. My best wishes to you both for another year of health and happiness."

Mrs. Florin said, "Best respects, sir, and than you, sir, and the same to you."

\* safety razor — безопасная бритва

\*\* paper streamers — разноцветные бумажные украшения к Рождеству

Florin said, "And a great pleasure it is to see Miss Nina — Mrs. Littlejohn, I should say — with us once more at her old home, and her husband too, and I'm suré Mrs. Florin and me wish them every happiness and prosperity in their married life together, and all I can say, if they can be as happy together as me and Mrs. Florin has been well, that's the best I can wish them." Then the family went away, and the house settled down to its afternoon nap\*.

Later, Nina came in to say that there were carol singers\*\* outside the drawing-room window.

"Bring them in," said the Colonel. "Bring them in. They come every year. And tell Florin to bring up the punch."

Florin brought up the punch in a huge silver punch bowl and Nina brought in the waits\*\*\*. They stood against the sideboard, caps in hand, blinking in the gaslight, and very red about the nose and cheeks with the sudden warmth.

"Oh, tidings of comfort and joy,"

they sang, "comfort and joy.

Oh, tidings of comfort and joy."

They sang the carols and Florin ladled out the punch, seeing that the younger ones did not get the glasses intended for their elders, but that each, according to his capacity, got a little more, but not much more, than was good for him.

The Colonel tasted the punch and pronounced it excellent. He then asked the carol singers their names and where they came from, and finally gave their leader five shillings and sent them off into the snow.

"It's been just like this every year, as long as I can remember," said the Colonel.

\* afternoon nap — послеобеденный сон

\*\* carol singers — исполнители рождественских песен, которые ходят по домам и поют свои песни, собирая деньги на благотворительные нужды церкви

\*\*\* waits = carol singers

## A DAY IN THE LIFE OF LINDA MCCARTNEY

We live in a two-bedroom house so as soon as James starts calling "Mummy, Mummy" about 7 every morning, he wakes everybody up. Being his mother I like to be the first to greet him, so I get up.

I take him downstairs and start getting breakfast ready. Soon the other kids — Heather, Mary and Stella are also down. If Paul, my husband is tired we don't disturb him. But if he doesn't work hard he gets up at the same time and joins the kids at breakfast. He is an excellent father and is very protective towards them.

It seemed mad to move from a large house in London to a small place on the South Coast, but it is so much cosier. Paul and I are in the kind of business where we hardly see them grow up.

The kids travel everywhere with us. We're all vegetarians, so breakfast is eggs from our own hens, fried home-grown tomatoes, vegetarian sausages, cereals and wholewheat bread.

Quite often Paul comes with me when I drive the girls to school. Mary and Stella go to a local primary school and Heather attends a nearby art school.

I buy most of the kids' clothes at the nearest department store. I myself feel most comfortable in jeans and T-shirt. I don't really spend much, even though Paul pays all the bills.

I'm regarded as just mother, mother who takes her children to school and has a house to keep. I try to keep my life close to what it was before we married.

Because we have a big breakfast and a big dinner at about six we don't have lunch. So at that time I'm doing jobs about the house. Paul never helps me. If I'm working or going out I have a woman in to do the cleaning. But I enjoy cooking and I cook every day.

For dinner I make things like spaghetti, salads and Paul's favourites which are pea soup or tomato soup made from home-made tomatoes and onions.

If I'm lucky during the day I go for a ride on my favourite horse. Horse riding is a marvellous form of exercise, both physically and spiritually. One interest we share closely is football, we always watch it on television. Because we live in the country we don't socialize very much. We think that's also partly because we're too lazy. There's so much I'd like to do, but I hate to leave the life I lead in the country unless I absolutely have to.

Most of our evenings are spent in front of the television. I watch films, Top of the Pops and some quiz shows. Before I turn in for the night I always go to the kids' bedroom and give them each a kiss. James often wakes up and doesn't want to go back to sleep.

## SOME FACTS ABOUT LIFE IN THE USA

### I. THE WEEKEND

Many people in the United States look forward to the weekend. It's the time to relax, have fun, and do things around the house.

On Friday nights, many people like to relax after work. They go out for dinner, to the movies, concerts, or plays. Other people just like to stay home and watch TV.

On Saturday mornings, supermarkets and shopping malls\* are crowded with people buying food, clothing, presents, and other things they need.

Many people do chores\*\* around the house on Saturday afternoons. They paint, clean attics and basements, rake leaves, do laundry, and wash cars.

On Saturday evenings, many people like to go out. They visit friends, invite people to come over to dinner, or go to the movies, the theatre, or a sporting event.

\* shopping malls — крупные торговые центры

\*\* to do chores — заниматься уборкой, разными домашними делами

On Sunday mornings, many people like to sleep late, especially people who stayed up late on Saturday night. People often go to church on Sunday. They read the newspaper, and often eat a late breakfast called "brunch."

On Sunday afternoons when the weather is nice, you see many families at the zoo or in parks. During the winter, many people spend Sunday afternoons at theatres, museums, or shopping malls. Many families have a big dinner on Sunday afternoons. Grandparents and other relatives often come to visit. On Sunday evenings, people usually stay home and prepare for the week ahead.

Weekends can be very busy!

## II. FOOD MARKETS

In some parts of the United States, there are enormous supermarkets with aisles and aisles of different kinds of foods and products. For example, you can find fifteen to twenty different kinds of cheese in the Dairy section. You can find many different brands of toilet tissue in the Paper Products section. The Frozen Food section has everything from cans of frozen apple juice to bags of mixed vegetables, from ice cream to frozen pizza.

Many supermarkets also have a big Health Care Products aisle. The section is like a small drug store. It has different brands of medicines, shampoos, toothpastes, and other health care items. Some supermarkets even sell magazines, books, shoes, underwear, hammers, screwdrivers, and other household products.

The supermarkets offer services, too. You can leave your film there and return the next day to get your photographs. You can use a special card in the "money machines" and take money out of your bank. In some supermarkets, you can rent floor polishers, carpet cleaners, and even movies!

Shoppers in many supermarkets can buy snacks and cold drinks from vending machines. In some places, tired, hungry shoppers can even sit down and enjoy a fresh cup of coffee and a doughnut\* at a supermarket snack bar or coffee shop.

These huge supermarkets with their large variety of goods and services are not the only kind of food markets in the United States. There are smaller grocery stores in many cities. These stores usually carry the same food products as the large supermarkets, but they don't usually have as wide a selection. Grocery stores are often in locations convenient for people who don't drive. Some cities also have specialty stores such as fish markets, butcher shops, and bakeries. Years ago, these little shops were very common, but in many places, they are less common today. Supermarkets, with their variety of products and services, are much more popular.

## III. VIDEOCASSETTE RECORDERS

The way that many people in the United States watch movies has changed in recent years. People don't just "go to the movies" any more, they also take the movies home! The videocassette recorder has made this possible, and it has helped change the social life of the country.

Going to movie theatres can be very enjoyable, but sometimes it isn't a very pleasant experience. People have to stand in line to buy tickets, which might cost five dollars or more apiece. A few more dollars are spent on popcorn, candy, and drinks. Sometimes it's difficult to find good seats, and very often, the seats aren't very comfortable. In addition, there is always the possibility that a very tall person will sit down in front of the moviegoer and block the screen. It can also be very disturbing when people get up to go to the snack bar or bathroom in the middle of the film.

\* doughnut ['daʊnʌt] — пончик; жареный пирожок

The videocassette recorder (VCR) offers an alternative to a night at the movies. People can simply go to a "Video Club" store in their neighbourhood, rent one or more movies for a day or a weekend, and watch them in the comfort of their own home. Videotapes can be rented at these special stores, as well as at many supermarkets, drug stores, and convenience stores. They aren't very expensive, just two dollars or so per day. Many different movies are available on videotape, from adventure movies and comedies to science fiction films and westerns.

Watching a movie at home can be very convenient, and a lot cheaper. VCR owners can make their own popcorn and other snacks and sit back and enjoy a film with family and friends. They can stop the movie to make more snacks, answer the phone, or check on the baby. There are no lines to stand in, no tickets to buy, and no uncomfortable movie theatre seats.

For many people, however, enjoying a movie still means a night out at the neighbourhood movie theatre. For these moviegoers, nothing can replace the excitement of watching their favourite actors and actresses as they appear larger than life on a big movie screen. And for them, waiting in line, running to get good seats, and sitting with a huge box of popcorn while surrounded by other moviegoers is all part of the special movie theatre experience that a VCR just can't match.

#### IV. TRADITIONS AND CUSTOMS. HALLOWE'EN

Hallowe'en is a festival celebrated on October 31st. The name of the holiday means "hallowed" or "holy evening" because it happens the day before All Saints Day.

It is said that Hallowe'en is the children's New Year's Eve. They dress up with special costumes, they eat too much, and stay up too late celebrating.

Children go around the neighbourhood wearing make-up, and dressed in masks and colourful costumes. The most common costumes are witches, ghosts, skeletons, and popular TV, movie, and storybook characters. Some costumes are home-

made; others are bought in stores. The children go door to door saying "trick or treat." People give them candy, cookies, fruit, or money. Sometimes money is collected to help UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund).

Homes, stores, and classrooms are decorated in the traditional Hallowe'en colours, orange and black. Usual decorations are witches, black cats, ghosts, skeletons, and jack-o-lanterns. Jack-o-lanterns are pumpkins that are carved to look like faces. They are placed on doorway entrances and in windows. Horror movies and ghost stories are shown on TV on this day.

Adults and older children also celebrate Hallowe'en with parades, festivals, and costume parties. Some people create their costumes; other people rent them. Contests are held where the best costume receives a prize. One of the party events popular with children is dunking for apples. Apples are put in tubs filled with water. People try to get the apples using only their mouths; hands cannot be used.

#### Background

Hallowe'en comes the day before "All Saints Day." Many superstitions are connected with this day. The Druids, a group of priests from Gaul and Britain, believed that ghosts, spirits, and witches came out to harm people on Hallowe'en. It is because of this legend that people place jack-o-lanterns, and scary decorations in front of their homes to scare evil spirits away. The Druids also thought that cats were sacred. They believed that they were once humans who were changed into animals because they did evil things. That is why black cats are part of Hallowe'en. It is also believed that the pumpkin symbolizes the human skull.

#### THE LADYBUG STORY

(By Michael J. Connoly)

This is a true story about Mrs. Pamela Johnson's second grade class at the Kennedy School in Franklin, Massachusetts.

One day, Mrs. Johnson told the class that, by law, there is a state bird — the chickadee — and a state tree — the American elm — and a state fish — the cod.

“What about a state bug?” somebody asked, “do we have one?”

“No,” said the teacher.

“I think there should be a state bug,” said one little boy.

“I think so too,” said a little girl, “and I think it should be a ladybug\*.” All of the children agreed.

“What a good idea,” said their teacher. “Maybe our class can make the ladybug the state bug. Maybe we can help make it a new law!”

All of the boys and girls began to talk excitedly. They agreed that they would like very much to try. It would take a long time, the teacher told them, but in the end it would be worth it\*\*.

The class learned that everyone who lives in Massachusetts has the right to give legislators, the men and women who make the laws, ideas for new laws. This right is called the right of free petition.

So Mrs. Johnson wrote to the State House, the capitol building, in Boston and in a few days the class received a petition form. They wrote their idea about a state bug on the special form. Then, Mrs. Johnson told them, they would have to get their petition signed by a legislator. She explained that there are two kinds of legislators, representatives, who speak for one or two towns, and senators, who speak for several towns.

They found out that their town, Franklin, has its own senator and its own representative. So the children wrote to their representative. He wrote back to say he would be glad to sign the petition.

After their petition was signed, it began its long journey to becoming a law.

\* ladybug — божья коровка

\*\* it would be worth it — это будет стоить того (т. е. всех наших усилий)

The class decided to find out everything that would happen to their petition on its journey and make sure to be there when anything important happened along the way.

First, their petition had to become a bill. The House Clerk in the House of Representatives takes care of this. He read their ladybug petition and gave it its own number, H. 5155.

Then, he had to decide which of the committees in the House of Representatives to send the bill to. Different committees study different kinds of subjects. When the House Clerk picked the right committee, he had copies of the bill made and sent to all of the senators and representatives on the committee, so they could study it.

Meanwhile, at school, the children in Mrs. Johnson's class were busy making ladybug costumes to wear when the time came for them to visit the State House. They wanted to show everyone there how much they really cared about making the ladybug the official bug!

When the class heard which committee was studying their bill, they wrote to find out when their bill would be “heard.” A committee has a public hearing for each bill it studies. At a hearing, anyone can come and say why he or she thinks a bill should or should not be made a law or passed into law.

On the day of the public hearing, Mrs. Johnson's second grade class dressed in ladybug costumes and got on the yellow school bus and rode all the way to Boston to the State House. They walked inside the enormous building with the shiny golden dome and into the room where the hearing was being held. They wanted to testify — to tell the legislators about their idea.

When it was their turn\*, some of the boys and girls stood up and told the legislators why they thought it would be a wonderful idea to make the ladybug the official state bug.

\* when it was their turn — когда настала их очередь



"They're so beautiful with their shiny orange backs and bold black spots," they said, "and they can be found in everyone's backyard."

The committee listened very carefully while the children explained how they felt. Then the committee had to decide what to tell all the other legislators, who would later vote on the new idea. You will be glad to hear that the committee told the House of Representatives that they believed the ladybug bill should be passed into law! The class was very happy.

A few weeks later, Mrs. Johnson's class got back on the school bus and headed for Boston. It was the day that all of the representatives were going to discuss the ladybug bill for the first time. This time the class went to the beautiful chambers of the House of Representatives. They stood high up in a balcony where they could see and hear everything that was happening.

The class found out that there are three readings of every bill before a final vote can be taken. So between the three readings, the class visited some of the representatives in their offices and wrote to others to ask them to vote for the bill.

The House of Representatives voted for the ladybug bill, and then sent it to the Senate to be read and voted on again. The children once again returned to Boston and this time they sat in the gallery of the Senate chamber to hear the Senators talk about the ladybug bill. The Senate also liked the bill and wanted it to be made into a new law. The children cheered!

Now the bill was printed on very special paper called parchment and sent back to the House of Representatives for a final vote called enactment. Soon, the Senate also did the same.

At last, the bill could go to the governor. If he agreed that the ladybug should be the state bug, he would sign the bill. The governor agreed! He invited Mrs. Johnson's second grade class to be there when he wrote his signature on the bill.

They all wore their best clothes and piled once again into the bus to make the last, familiar journey to the State House in Boston. They walked up the grand staircase to the governor's

office and watched as he signed their bill into law. They were very proud.

And that is how the ladybug came to be the official state bug of Massachusetts.

## SOME TIPS FOR A TRAVELLER TO THE USA

### I. GREETINGS

In North America, when people greet each other, they generally say, "Hi, how are you?" This is NOT a question but rather a greeting. The expected answer is usually short, for example:

"Fine"

"OK"

"Pretty good"

"Not bad."

A long, detailed answer or a negative answer would be strange unless you knew the person very well and could tell that the person expected more extensive information. People learning English may think that native speakers are impolite because they do not stop to have a conversation. But "How are you?" should be thought of in the same way as "Hello." It's simply a greeting.

### II. DOGGIE BAGS

In the US and Canada, if you eat out in restaurants frequently, you will sooner or later come across the idea of a "doggie bag." This refers to the custom which allows you to take home the food you ordered but cannot finish. Originally, restaurants had bags with the words "doggie bags" printed on them. The suggestion was that the food was to be given to the pet dog at home. (Of course, this was usually not the case.) Some people feel childish using this phrase and instead say to the waiter, "I'd like to take this home" or "I'd like to have this wrapped up." Your remaining food will be brought back in a

container, for you to enjoy later. If you haven't tried this, don't be embarrassed. It's a common custom.

### THE GREAT DAY

All the people of Palos came to the dock. They stood in silent groups and looked at the three ships that would soon sail away into the unknown.

The weather on August 3, 1492, was perfect. The sky was blue. A light breeze blew to the west. An old seaman whose sailing days had long been over looked up at the sky sniffed the wind. He grunted and said, "It's an ill wind. It'll blow them west straight into the arms of the Devil!"

A comrade of his, leaning on his stick, pointed to the three vessels and said, "Look long at them, cousin, and remember their names, for we'll never see them or their unhappy crews again."

"I am glad I'm old," one man said. "This is one journey I'll be glad to watch from land."

Another old sailor smiled. "The young men of Palos feel the same way. Some of them are hiding in the hills. Their wives are bringing food to them until this whole business is over. It was not easy finding crews for this journey."

"It is not surprising," came a voice, "that they had to empty the gaols to find men for these ships. Nake Bartolomé de Torres and his friends — brrr! That mad seafarer of Genoa will be very busy with a crew like that."

"Ah, but Martín Pinzón and his brother are sailing, too. They'll know how to deal with the men. That's a family of real sailors, those Pinzóns."

The first man winked. "Just between you and me, cousin, the Pinzón will know how to deal with that Genoese, too. He'll find it hard to keep his position when they are at sea."

They all laughed. "Leave it to our Palos boys," said the old man with the stick, "to show that foreigner Columbus his real place. Very soon there won't be much glory or pride left in him."

But one of the men said, "What's the difference? Who wants that kind of glory? They'll never come back to enjoy it."

Old Pedro Vasquez de la Frontera came by. He stopped for a moment and looked at the group of old sailors with scorn. "Vultures!" he said to them. "This is a great day, but your eyes have grown too weak to see it."

A group of seamen sat together on a pile of rope in the harbour. They spoke quietly.

"Which one did they put you on, Sancho?"

"I'm on the 'Pinta' with Captain Martín Pinzón," said Sancho.

"And I," said Rodrigo, "am on the 'Niña' under Vicente Pinzón."

The first sailor, Pedro growled, "They put me on the 'Santa Maria' under that Genoese with the crazy eyes."

Sancho said, "Ah, if only we could find a way out of this! Perhaps we could escape right now? We would be in the hills in just a few moments."

Pedro laughed. "Yes, and have all the royal police after us? One mistake, my friend, and they'll have us back in gaol quicker than you can think about it! No, that's not the way."

Rodrigo looked back over his shoulder before he asked, "Well, then, what is the way?"

Pedro smiled, showing his teeth. "The sea can hide very many things," he said. Then he opened his shirt cautiously to show the others a large knife he had hidden there. "Who knows? A stab in the back, a splash in the water, and then perhaps the ships will turn homewards because the foreigner fell overboard while watching the starts one night."

"Do you mean mutiny?"

"Why not?" Pedro asked. "Is there anyone here who likes this crazy Columbus?"

"But there are representatives of the king and queen aboard. How about the brothers Pinzón and the brothers Niño?"

Pedro was ready to answer. "The royal representatives need not know how Columbus meets his death. And I'm sure that the Pinzón brothers would be glad to learn that Columbus is out of their way. The Ninos are loyal to Columbus, that is true, but we will find a way to handle them."

Rodrigo shook his head. "It's risky," he said. "This Columbus talks too much about the gold he expects to find and he knows very well how to persuade people. When there's the promise of riches, you can't depend on anyone. The men think differently. They are afraid like us, but they also desire gold and adventure. It will be hard to bring them to our side."

"We shall see what the sea will bring," said Pedro. "But quiet now, everyone. Here comes Chachu the boatswain!"

A big man in a red woollen cap came up to the group of whispering sailors. His voice was loud. "Hurry to your ships and make it lively! We're sailing in half an hour!"

Voices were heard all over the dock. Men hurried up the gangways. The decks of the three vessels were soon full of busy sailors getting ready for departure.

"Well, Christopher," Bartholomew put his hands on his brother's shoulders and looked into his eyes. His own eyes were wet. "At last the dream of your life has realized!"

"Not yet, Bartholomew," Christopher answered.

"I know you'll find the Indies." Columbus smiled. "I'd like everyone who is sailing with me to think so," he said.

Bartholomew frowned. "I don't trust those Pinzóns," he said. "They're plotting something."

"I know," said Christopher, "but there's nothing I can do about it. Without them, I should be unable to organize the expedition."

"Martín Alonso Pinzón is captain of the 'Pinta,' and he has two of his brothers on the same ship. Vicente is captain of the 'Niña.' They control two of your ships," said Bartholomew.

"It's only Martín and the 'Pinta' that I'm worried about," said Columbus. "He's ambitious and he really thinks this

whole enterprise is more his than mine. But I think I can count on the 'Niña' and Vicente."

"Well, I hope so. Goodbye, Christopher!"

"Goodbye, Bartholomew."

Christopher Columbus turned and walked quickly up the gangway of the "Santa Maria." He waved his hand. "Haul away, Chachu," he called to his boatswain.

With long oars the men pushed the ships away from the dock. They drifted out into the Rio Tinto, and then downstream towards the sea. Then men pulled at their oars.

A sound like a great groan went up from the hundreds of people standing at the docks. As the ships passed the cliffs on which the monastery of Rábida was built, they could hear the chanting of the friars. The men took off their caps, crossed themselves and then bent to the oars again. A boy named Diego ran along the cliffs, waving his cap. Soon they had passed the Saltés River and were ruling with the tide towards the open sea. The cars were shipped. The sea breeze caught the sails. White foam appeared at the ship's bows.

"The course, Captain-General Columbus?"

"South and by west, Chachu!"

"Yes, sir."

Columbus turned and looked back at the "Pinta" and "Niña" following him. He looked beyond them to the disappearing coast of Spain.

Suddenly he felt more lonely than ever before in his life. He looked at the grim faces of the sailors round him. No one met his eyes. Whom could he count on? Who was truly his friend?

"I shall have to learn to do without sleep on this voyage," he told himself.

## STORM BOY

*(After Colin Thiele)*

## I

Storm Boy lived between the Coorong and the sea. His home was the long, long snout of sandhill and scrub that curves away southeastwards from the Murray Mouth. A wild strip it is, with the flat shallow water of the South Australian Coorong on one side and the endless slam of the Southern Ocean on the other. They call it the Ninety Mile Beach. All day and all night the waves tumble and thunder. And when the wind rises it whips the sand up the beach.

Storm Boy lived with Hide-Away Tom, his father. Their home was a rough little humpy made of wood and brush and flattened sheets of iron from old tins. It had a dirt floor, two blurry bits of glass for windows, and a little crooked chimney made of stovepipes and wire. It was hot in summer and cold in winter, and it shivered when the great storms came. But Storm Boy was happy there.

Hide-Away was a quiet, lonely man. Years before, when Storm Boy's mother had died, he had left Adelaide and gone to live like a hermit by the sea. People looked down their noses when they heard about it, and called him a beachcomber. They said it was a bad thing to take a young boy to such a wild, lonely place. But Storm Boy and his father didn't mind. They were both happy.

People seldom saw Hide-Away or Storm Boy. Now and then they sailed up the Coorong in their little boat to the little town with a name like a water-bird's cry — Goolwa! There Storm Boy's father bought boxes and tins of food, coils of rope and fishing lines, new shirts and sandals, kerosene for the lamp, and lots of other packages and parcels until the little boat was loaded like a junk.

People in the street looked at them wonderingly and said to each other, "There's Tom, the beachcomber from down the coast. He's come out of his hide-away for a change." And so,

by and by, they just nicknamed him "Hide-Away," and nobody even remembered his real name.

Storm Boy got his name in a different way. One day some campers came through the scrub to the far side of the Coorong. They carried a boat down to the water and crossed over to the ocean beach. But a dark storm came towering in from the west during the day. The campers ran back over the sandhills through the flying cloud and the gloom. Suddenly one of them stopped and pointed through a break in the rain and mist.

"Great Scot! Look! Look!"

A boy was wandering down the beach all alone. He was as calm and happy as you please, stopping every now and then to pick up shells.

"He must be lost!" cried the camper. "Quick, take my things down to the boat; I'll run and rescue him." But when he turned round the boy had gone. They couldn't find him anywhere. The campers rushed off through the storm and raised an alarm as soon as they could get back to town.

"Quick, there's a little boy lost way down the beach," they cried. "Hurry, or we'll be too late to save him." But the post-master at Goolwa smiled.

"No need to worry," he said. "That's Hide-Away's little chap. He's your boy in the storm."

And from then on everyone called him Storm Boy.

## II

The only other man who lived anywhere near them was Fingerbone Bill, the Aboriginal. He was a wiry, wizened man with a flash of white teeth and a jolly black face as screwed-up and wrinkled as an old boot. He had a humpy by the shore of the Coorong about a mile away.

Fingerbone knew more about things than anyone Storm Boy had ever known. He could point out fish in the water and birds in the sky when even Hide-Away couldn't see a thing. He

knew all the signs of wind and weather in the clouds and the sea. And he could read all the strange writing on the sandhills and beaches — the scribbly stories made by beetles and mice and ant-eaters and crabs and birds' toes. Before long Storm Boy had learnt enough to fill a hundred books.

In his humpy Fingerbone kept a disorganized collection of iron hooks, wire netting, leather, bits of brass, boat oars, tins, rope, torn shirts, and an old blunderbuss. He was very proud of the blunderbuss because it still worked. Once he found a big glass marble and blew it clean through a wooden box just to prove that blunderbuss worked. But the only time Storm Boy ever saw Fingerbone kill anything with it was when a tiger snake came sliding through the grass to the shore like a thin stream of black glass barred with red hot coals. As it slid over the sand towards his boat Fingerbone grabbed his blunderbuss and blew the snake to pieces.

"Number One had fellow, tiger snake," he said. "Kill him dead!" Storm Boy never forgot.

### III

As the years went by, Storm Boy learnt many things. All living creatures were his friends. In a hole at the end of a burrow he found the Fairy Penguin looking shyly at two white eggs. And when the two chicks hatched out they were little bundles of dark brown as soft as dusk.

"Hullo, Mrs. Penguin," said Storm Boy each day. "How are your little ones today?"

Fairy Penguin didn't mind Storm Boy. Instead of pecking and hissing at him she sat back sedately on her tail and looked at him gently with mild eyes.

Sometimes in the hollows behind the sandhills, Storm Boy found long, white heaps of sea-shell and bits of stone.

"An old midden," said Hide-Away, "left by the Aborigines."

"What's a midden?"

"A camping place where they used to crack their shellfish." Fingerbone stood for a long time gazing at the great heaps of shells, as if far off in thought.

"Dark people eat, make camp, long time ago," he said a little sadly. "No whitefellow here den\*. For hundreds and hundreds of years, only blackfellows."

Storm Boy looked at the big heaps of shell and wondered how long ago it must have been. He could paint it in his mind... the red campfires by the Coorong, the songs, the clicking of empty shells falling on the piles as they were thrown away. And, he thought to himself, "If that time were now, I'd be a little black boy."

Storm Boy liked best of all to wander along the beach after what Hide-Away called a Big Blow. For then all kinds of treasure had been thrown up by the wind and the wild waves. There, where the wide stretch of beach was shining, he would see the sea things lying as if they'd been dropped on a sheet of glass — all kinds of weed and coloured kelp, starfish, little dead seahorses and dozens of different shells.

He grew up to be hardy. Most of the year he wore nothing but shorts, a shirt, and a battered old Tom Sawyer hat. But when the winter wind came sweeping up from Antarctica with ice on its tongue, he put on one of his father's thick coats that came down to his ankles. Then he would turn up the collar, let his hands dangle down to get lost in the huge pockets, and go outside again. For he couldn't bear to be inside. He loved the whip of the wind too much.

## FAMOUS PEOPLE

### WINSTON CHURCHILL

Churchill, Sir Winston (1874—1965), British leader in the Second World War, was English on his father's side, American — on his mother's. W. Churchill went to Harrow School but he

\* den = then (абориген говорит на ломаном английском)

never got into the upper school because he didn't want to study Latin and Greek. After leaving school he became an officer.

During the South African War in 1899 Churchill went out as war correspondent for a newspaper. He was taken prisoner but escaped from the prison camp. His escape made him famous overnight. After returning to England Churchill started his political career. He soon became a Member of Parliament and at the end of the First World War he became secretary of state for War. In this post he developed British air power and became a pilot himself. In the 1930s Churchill mostly wrote books. When the Second World War started in 1939 he became Prime Minister of Great Britain. After the war he again turned to writing books. He got the Nobel Prize for literature in 1953. At the age of 77 he again became Prime Minister but resigned in 1955. He died at the age of 90.

#### JOHN CONSTABLE (1776 – 1837)

Most people today when asked to name an English painter would answer "Constable." John Constable is considered the greatest English landscape painter.

Constable was born in Suffolk in 1776. The son of a rich mill owner, Constable showed a taste for sketching at an early age but did not become a serious art student until 1799. He entered the Royal Academy School in 1800. Two years later he began to exhibit his first pictures. Constable worked hard but fame was slow to arrive. In 1824 when he was fifty he showed a number of landscapes at the Paris Salon. Among these was his famous "Hay Wain" for which the painter was awarded the gold medal. In his own country, however, there were few people who appreciated what he had to offer and very little market for landscapes. In his early days he had to earn money by doing portraits of rich people but he wanted to paint "portraits of places," and to give a true and full impression of nature. While other men roamed the world in search of ideal landscape, Constable found all he

needed in his immediate locality. His chosen scenes are usually of his home places, of Suffolk and of Hamstead.

He was made an associate of the Royal Academy in 1819 and elected to full membership in 1829 but he felt that this honour had come too late in life to have much meaning.

Perhaps the most interesting about Constable's technique was that he made quick sketches settling down his first spontaneous and emotional reactions to natural beauties; these visual impressions, even more than his finished works are regarded as his real contribution. His most famous pictures are "The Flatford Mill," "The Hay Wain," "A View on the Stour near Dedham" and "The Leaping Horse."

#### HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, THE PRINCE OF WALES

Prince Charles, Prince of Wales, is the eldest son of Queen Elizabeth II. He was born at Buckingham Palace on 14 November 1948. In 1952 he became heir and as such automatically received a number of titles. He was created Prince of Wales and Earl of Chester in 1958.

He was educated at a famous grammar school in Australia, then at Cambridge and the University College of Wales.

The Prince served as an officer in the Royal Navy from 1972 to 1976; he also qualified as a Royal Air Force pilot. In addition to the normal royal duties at home and abroad he studied various aspects of public life in Britain; industry abroad and the foreign investment in particular.

He is President of about 200 organizations and each year undertakes more than 400 engagements. In 1988 he wrote and presented the television documentary "A Vision of Britain" about his views on architecture. A book based on the programme was published in 1989. In 1990 he wrote and presented a second television programme "The Earth in Britain," part of an initiative to highlight environmental issues.

On 29 July 1981 he married Lady Diana Spencer at St. Paul's Cathedral. The Prince and Princess of Wales have two children:

Prince William of Wales, born on 21 June 1982 and Prince Henry of Wales, born on 15 September 1984. In 1996 Diana and Charles divorced. In 1997 Diana was tragically killed in a car accident.

#### WILLIAM SOMERSET MAUGHAM

William Somerset Maugham is one of the best-known English writers of the 20th century. He was not only an outstanding novelist but also one of the most successful dramatists and short-story writers. He was also one of the world's highest-paid authors.

W.S. Maugham was born in Paris in 1874. His father worked at the British Embassy in France and William spent his childhood in that country. Unfortunately his parents died when he was still a boy and he went to live with his relatives at Canterbury. After finishing King's, the Cathedral school, he went to Germany to study at Heidelberg University. He returned to England the same year and entered St. Thomas's Hospital in Lambeth — one of the poorest districts of London, as a medical student. In 1897, when he was only 23, Maugham wrote and published his first novel "Liza of Lambeth." After five years at St. Thomas's Hospital he went to Spain to learn Spanish and write another book. He had decided to become a writer.

The next ten years were very hard. But then the manager of the Court Theatre in London agreed to take Maugham's play. The play made W. Maugham famous. Soon four of his plays were on at different London theatres. They were a success. Maugham made up his mind to continue writing plays for the rest of his life. But five years later he started on the longest of all his novels "Of Human Bondage" (1915). This book is in many ways an autobiographical novel. It tells the story of the first thirty years of Maugham's life. His hero, Philip Carey, goes to school in England and Germany, tries to paint for some time in Paris, returns to London to study medicine and leaves the reader at the end to continue as a doctor in the country. Many critics consider Maugham's "Of Human Bondage" to

be his masterpiece, and it was Theodor Dreizer who called public attention to its merits in 1919, giving it a new life.

Maugham's favourite novel is "Cakes and Ale" (1930) which describes the backstage life of writers and unmasks egoism and hypocrisy. Other popular novels include "The Moon and Sixpence," "Theatre," "The Painted Veil."

During World War I W. Maugham was in the British Intelligence Service. His work there is depicted in a collection of short stories under the title of "Ashenden, or the British Agent" published in 1928.

He died in 1965 at his villa at Cap Ferret in the South of France where he had lived since 1930.

His style is clear-cut and elegant and for learners of English his works are a wonderful source of enriching their vocabulary and language skills.

### ОСНОВНЫЕ ПРАВИЛА ЧТЕНИЯ ГЛАСНЫХ И СОГЛАСНЫХ

Чтение гласных

А а	<b>Ударный слог</b>		
	в открытом слоге	[eɪ]	— take, place, name, cake, state
	в закрытом слоге	[æ]	— map, sat, stand, happy, apple
	перед г	[ɑ:]	— car, art, dark, farm, party
	перед ге	[eə]	— care, bare, share, prepare
	Неударный слог	[ə]	— ago, about, legal, formal
	<b>Буквосочетания</b>		
	ai, ay	[eɪ]	— main, chain, day, way, play
	aw, au	[ɔ:]	— saw, law, autumn, cause
	ar после w	[ɔ:]	— war, warm, warn
ar после qu	[ɔ:]	— quarter, quarrel	
an + согласная	[ɑ:]	— answer, dance, chance	
a + ss, st, sk	[ɑ:]	— class, last, ask, task	
a + ft, th	[ɑ:]	— after, craft, bath, rather	
w(h) + a	[ɒ]	— watch, wash, was, what, want	
Е е	<b>Ударный слог</b>		
	в открытом слоге	[i:]	— be, he, me, see, meter, Pete
	в закрытом слоге	[e]	— best, next, left, smell
	перед г	[z:]	— her, term, left, verse
	перед ге	[ɪə]	— here, mere, severe
	Неударный слог	[ɪ]	— begin, return, because, between
		[ə]	— mother, father, corner, over
	<b>Буквосочетания</b>		
	ee, ea	[i:]	— green, seem, sea, clean
	ea + d	[e]	— bread, head, already
<i>Исключения: read [rɪd], lead [li:d]</i>			
ei + gh	[eɪ]	— eight, weight	
ew	[ju:] [u:]	— few, new, grew, blew	
ey	[eɪ]	— grey, obey	
ee, ea + г	[ɪə]	— deer, dear, hear, appear	
ear + согласная	[z:]	— learn, earth, early	
I i	<b>Ударный слог</b>		
	в открытом слоге	[aɪ]	— life, five, fine, tie, time
	<i>Исключения: live [lɪv], give [gɪv]</i>		
	в закрытом слоге	[ɪ]	— sit, lift, pick, little
	перед г	[z:]	— bird, girl, first, circle
	перед ге	[aɪə]	— fire, tired, admire
	Неударный слог	[ɪ]	— origin, engine
	<b>Буквосочетания</b>		
i + id, nd	[aɪ]	— child, find, kind, mind	
<i>Исключения: children ['tʃɪldrən], window ['wɪndəʊ]</i>			
i + gh	[aɪ]	— night, light, right, high	
Ударный слог			
	в открытом слоге	[əʊ]	— close, note, rose, home

О о	в закрытом слоге	[ɒ]	— stop, long, song, copper
	перед г	[ɔ:]	— form, born, fork, border
	перед ге	[ɔ:]	— store, before, restore
	<b>Неударный слог</b>	[əʊ]	— photo, motto, Negro
	суффиксы ous	[əs]	— famous, various, numerous
	суффиксы or	[ə]	— doctor, tractor, conductor
	<b>Буквосочетания</b>		
	oa	[əʊ]	— coat, boat, road, roast
	oi, oy	[ɔɪ]	— oil, noise, boy, enjoy
	oo+k	[ʊ]	— look, book, took
	oo + l, m, n, d, t	[u:]	— cool, tool, soon, food, root
	oo+r	[ɔ:]	— door, floor
ou	[əʊ]	— house, mouth, cloud, round	
ou + gh	[ɔ:]	— bought, thought, brought	
ou + r	[ɔ:]	— four, course, your	
o+l+ согласная	[əʊ]	— old, cold, told, hold	
ow + согласная	[əʊ]	— town, brown, crowd, down	
ow (на конце)	[əʊ]	— know, grow, low, slow, show	
og после w	[z:]	— work, word, world, worse	
U u	<b>Ударный слог</b>		
	в открытом слоге	[ju:]	— tube, tune, useful
	в закрытом слоге	[u:]	— blue, true, June
	в закрытом слоге	[ʌ]	— cut, but, hurry, hunter
	перед г + согласная	[z:]	— turn, burn, curly, hurt
перед г + гласная	[(j)əʊ]	— pure, during, sure	
Неударный слог	[ə]	— upon, success, difficult	
Y y	<b>Ударный слог</b>		
	в открытом слоге	[aɪ]	— my, try, type, cycle
	в закрытом слоге	[ɪ]	— symbol, system
	перед ге	[aɪə]	— tyre
	перед гласной	[j]	— year, you, young, yet
Неударный слог	[ɪ]	— any, many, very, only	

### Чтение согласных

Cc	перед e, i, y	[s]	— face, city, bicycle
	перед a, o, u и согласной	[k]	— case, cat, cut, cool, coal, class, fact
<b>Сочетания</b>			
	ch, tch	[tʃ]	— watch, match, bench, chief
	ck	[k]	— clock, thick, quick
Gg	перед e, i, y	[dʒ]	— page, age, engineer
	перед a, o, u	[g]	— gate, got, great, fog
<b>Сочетание</b>			
	ng	[ŋ]	— bring, sing, ring



Ss	в начале слова	[s]	— say, such, send, stop, speak
	перед глухой согласной	[s]	— rest, best, ask, test
	после глухой согласной	[s]	— books, desks, asks, gets, puts
	после звонких согласных и гласных	[z]	— beds, reads, boys, days, factories
	между гласными	[z]	— rise, these, please
Ww	перед суффиксами -ion, -ure	[ʒ]	— occasion, pleasure, measure
	в суффиксе -ous	[s]	— famous, numerous
	перед гласной	[w]	— wind, was, way
Cочетания	перед h	[w]	— when, where, what, why, white
	who	[h]	— who, whose, whom, whole
	wt	[r]	— write, wrote, wrong

## БУКВОСОЧЕТАНИЯ

bt	[t]	— debt, doubt, subtle
ght	[t]	— light, night, right
gn	[n]	— sign, design, reign
kn	[n]	— know, knife, knit
ph	[f]	— photo, philosophy
qu	[kw]	— queen, question
sh	[ʃ]	— wish, show, fresh
ss + ion	[ʃn]	— permission
ss	[s]	— passive, possible
		в начале и в конце знаменательных слов
	[θ]	— thin, thick, month, path
th		в начале служебных слов, местоимений, наречий и между гласными
	[ð]	— the, this, that, those, thus, they, though, gather, bathe, weather

## "TO BE" в Present Indefinite

I <i>am</i> a student.	We <i>are</i> students.
You <i>are</i> a student.	You <i>are</i> students.
He <i>is</i> a student.	They <i>are</i> students.
She <i>is</i> a student.	
It <i>is</i> a book.	

## Вопросительные предложения с "TO BE" и ответы

<i>Am</i> I a teacher?	— Yes, I <i>am</i> . No, I <i>am not</i> (I'm <i>not</i> ).
<i>Are</i> you a student?	— Yes, I <i>am</i> . I <i>am</i> a student. No, I <i>am not</i> . I'm a doctor.
<i>Is</i> he English?	— Yes, he <i>is</i> . No, he <i>is not</i> (he <i>isn't</i> ).
<i>Is</i> she from Canada?	— Yes, she <i>is</i> . She's from Canada. No, she <i>isn't</i> . She <i>is</i> from France.
<i>Are</i> we in England?	— Yes, you <i>are</i> . You <i>are</i> in Bath. No, you <i>are not</i> (you <i>aren't</i> ). You <i>are</i> in Scotland.

## "TO HAVE" в Present Indefinite

I <i>have</i> a brother.	We <i>have</i> a car.
You <i>have</i> a house.	You <i>have</i> a garden.
He <i>has</i> a dog. She <i>has</i> a cat. It <i>has</i> a window.	They <i>have</i> three children.
to have = to have got: You've got a house. We've got a car.	

## Вопросительные предложения с "TO HAVE" и ответы

<i>Have</i>	I you we they	money? a cousin? a dictionary?	— Yes, you <i>have</i> . — No, I <i>have not</i> . — Yes, you <i>have</i> . — No, they <i>have not</i> ( <i>haven't</i> ).
<i>Has</i>	he she it	a family? a grandmother? long ears?	— Yes, he <i>has</i> . — No, she <i>hasn't</i> . — Yes, it <i>has</i> .

Examples:

Have you (got) a car? — Yes, I *have*. No, I *haven't*.  
 Have they (got) children? — Yes, they *have*. No, they *haven't*.  
 Has he (got) an umbrella? — Yes, he *has*. No, he *hasn't*.  
 How many daughters *has* he got? — He's got two.

## Вводное THERE с глаголом "to be"

There is a table in the room.	— В комнате (есть) стол.
There is a vase on the table.	— На столе стоит ваза.
There are flowers in the vase.	— В вазе (стоят) цветы.
There is some milk in the glass.	— В стакане есть молоко.
There is little water in the cup.	— В чашке мало воды.
There are no apples in the fridge.	— В холодильнике нет яблок.

## Вопросительные предложения и ответы

Is there a table in the room?	— Yes, <i>there is</i> . No, <i>there isn't</i> .
Are there plates on the table?	— Yes, <i>there are</i> . No, <i>there aren't</i> .
Is there any tea in the cup?	— Yes, <i>there is some</i> . No, <i>there isn't any</i> .
Are there any questions?	— Yes, <i>there are</i> . No, <i>there aren't</i> .
Is there a telephone in the house?	— Yes, <i>there is</i> . No, <i>there isn't</i> .
Is there any time?	— Yes, <i>there is some</i> . No, <i>there isn't</i> .

## QUESTIONS (вопросы)

What?	— кто, что (по профессии)? — какой?		
Who?	— кто?		
Whom?	— кого? кому?		
Where?	— где? куда?		
Why?	— почему?		
Which?	— какой (из)? который?		
How?	— как?		
How	much? many?	(time, money, water, etc.) (books, rooms, chairs, etc.)	— сколько?
What time?	— когда?		
At what time?	— в какое время?		

Examples:

What is she?  
 What are you doing?  
 Who can help me?  
 Who are you waiting for?  
 Whom does he love?  
 Where do you come from?  
 Where are you going?  
 Why is she unhappy?  
 Which of you can answer this question?  
 How can I get to the bus stop?  
 How much time does it take?  
 How many students are there in your group?  
 What time do you normally get up?  
 What colour is your favourite?

## МНОЖЕСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ

I.	a fact	— facts	s	[s]
	a cat	— cats		[z]
	a day	— days		
	a girl	— girls		
	a plane	— planes		
	a dress	— dresses	es	[ɪz]
	a box	— boxes		
	a place	— places		
	a city	— cities	ies	[ɪz]
	a family	— families		
	a leaf	— leaves	ves	[vz]
	a shelf	— shelves		

## II. Особые случаи образования множественного числа существительных

a man	(мужчина)	— men
a woman	(женщина)	— women
a foot	(нога)	— feet
a tooth	(зуб)	— teeth
a mouse	(мышь)	— mice
a child	(ребенок)	— children
a postman	(почтальон)	— postmen
a phenomenon	(явление)	— phenomena
a sheep	(овца)	— sheep

III. Существительные, употребляемые только в единственном числе			
weather	— погода	knowledge	— знания
furniture	— мебель	progress	— успехи
information	— сведения	hair	— волосы
advice	— совет(ы)	love	— любовь
news	— новости	anger	— злость
money	— деньги	work	— работа
watch	— часы	fish	— рыба
		fruit	— фрукты

IV. Существительные, употребляемые только во множественном числе	
contents — содержание	slums — трущобы
wages — зарплата	trousers — брюки
clothes — одежда	spectacles — очки
goods — товар	tropics — тропики
politics — политика	memoirs — мемуары
suburbs — окраина	scales — весы

### ПРИТЯЖАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ПАДЕЖ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ

Единственное число	cat's	— [s]
	Tom's	— [z]
	mother's	— [z]
	boss'(s)	— [z]
	Marx'(s)	— [z]
Множественное число	sisters'	— [z]
	children's	— [z]
	The Browns'(s)	— [z]

Притяжательный падеж существительных обозначает принадлежность:

Mother's bedroom is on the 2nd floor.

— Мамина спальня на втором этаже.

These are my sister's books.

— Это книги моей сестры.

Your children's pictures are so nice.

— Рисунки ваших детей очень хорошие.

The boss's office is very large.

— Приемная начальника очень большая.

### АРТИКЛЬ

**Неопределенный артикль a (an)** употребляется только в единственном числе, когда лицо или предмет не знакомы или употребляются впервые.

They live in *a* new house with *a* garden and *a* swimming pool.

He has *a* sister and *a* brother.

She was *a* young girl of 17.

I want *an* apple.

**Определенный артикль the** употребляется как в единственном, так и во множественном числе, когда лицо или предмет знакомы или известны говорящим.

*The* house is new and *the* garden is wonderful.

*The* sister and *the* brother are very much alike.

*The* young girl was only 17.

Хотя употребление того или иного артикля определяется контекстом, существуют случаи фиксированного употребления артикля.

#### Определенный артикль

1. The Russians, the English, the Americans.
2. The Browns, the Martins, the Petrovs.
3. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the USA, the Ukraine, the Netherlands.
4. The Pacific Ocean, the Black Sea, the English Channel, the Thames, the Volga.
5. The Urals, the Rocky Mountains, the Bermudas, the British Isles.

6. The first of September, the third place, the best novel, the most interesting book.

7. The North, the South, the East, the West.

8. The sun, the moon, the earth, the universe.

#### Артикль не употребляется:

1. Pushkin Square; house number 40; Downing Street, No. 10; page 15; room 105.

2. James Smith, Mary Larsen, Doctor Smith, Lord Byron, Queen Elizabeth.

3. Europe, Asia, Africa, South-East Asia, Latin America, France, Russia, Great Britain.

4. London, Washington, Moscow, Paris.

5. from day to day, from morning till night, from beginning to end, from head to foot, from time to time.

6. to have breakfast (lunch, dinner).

### ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНЫЕ

количественные	порядковые
1 — one	first
2 — two	second
3 — three	third
4 — four	forth
5 — five	fifth
6 — six	sixth
7 — seven	seventh
8 — eight	eighth
9 — nine	ninth
10 — ten	tenth
11 — eleven	eleventh
12 — twelve	twelfth
13 — thirteen	thirteenth
14 — fourteen	fourteenth
20 — twenty	twentieth
21 — twenty one	twenty first
32 — thirty two	thirty second

40 — forty, 50 — fifty

100 — a hundred, 300 — three hundred

1,000 — a thousand, 5,000 — five thousand

1,000,000 — a million, 10,000,000 — ten million

При чтении чисел после "hundred" произносится "and":

563 — five hundred and sixty three

1,450 — fourteen hundred and fifty

Даты:

1147 — eleven forty seven

1493 — fourteen ninety three

1992 — nineteen ninety two

1900 — nineteen hundred

1905 — nineteen "o" [ot] five

2000 — two thousand

### МЕСТОИМЕНΙΑ

Личные местоимения в именительном падеже	Личные местоимения в объектном падеже	Притяжательные местоимения	Абсолютная форма притяжательных местоимений	Возвратные местоимения
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

### Указательные местоимения

Единственное число	this — этот	that — тот
Множественное число	these — эти	those — те

Обратите внимание на употребление указательных местоимений множественного числа these (those) в роли подлежащего:

**These** are my books. — **Это** мои книги.

Examples:

I want to talk to **him**. Tell them about **her**.  
 Will you have dinner with **us**?  
 My family lives in Moscow. **Her** brother is a worker.  
**Their** house is better than **ours** (our house).  
 Is this **her** coat? — Yes, it's **hers** (her coat).  
 Can you do it **yourself**? The boy can dress **himself**.  
 She likes to stay by **herself**. I want to see it for **myself**.  
**This** is my sister and **these** are her friends.

Look at **this** girl! Look at **that** house!

## НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНЕНИЯ

Much	много — с неисчисляемыми существительными: much time, much money, much water, much sun, much snow, much milk, much food
Many	много — с исчисляемыми существительными: many books, many students, many houses, many trees, many flowers, many rivers
Little	мало — с неисчисляемыми существительными: little time, little money, little water, little sun, little snow, little milk, little food
Few	мало — с исчисляемыми существительными: few books, few students, few houses, few trees
A little	немного: I have a little time. Wait a little. There is a little water.
A few	несколько: There are a few chairs in the room. I want to tell you a few words.

Much и many в современном английском языке употребляются чаще в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях. В утвердительных предложениях употребляется a lot of как с исчисляемыми, так и с неисчисляемыми существительными.

Examples:

Have you got **many** relatives?  
 Do we have **much** work to do today?  
 We don't have **much** time to stay here long.  
 We have a **lot** of friends here.  
 He earns a **lot** of money.  
 They have a **lot** of children.  
 She spends a **lot** of time at home.

## SOME, ANY, NO и их производные

в утвердит. предлож.		в вопросит. предлож.		в отрицат. предлож.	
some	— какой-то, какой-нибудь, несколько	any*	— какой-нибудь, сколько-нибудь	no**	— никакой, несколько
something	— что-то, что-нибудь	anything	что-либо, что-нибудь	nothing	— ничего
somebody someone	кто-то, кто-нибудь	anybody anyone	— кто-либо, кто-нибудь	nobody no one, none	— ни один, никто
somewhere	— где-нибудь, куда-нибудь	anywhere	— где-либо, куда-либо	nowhere	— нигде, никуда
somehow	— как-нибудь, каким-нибудь образом	anyhow	— как-нибудь		
somewhat	— немного, в какой-то степени	anyway	— в любом случае		

\*Any в утвердительных предложениях означает «любой»; anything — что угодно, anybody — любой, кто угодно, anywhere — где угодно, куда угодно, anyhow — во всяком случае, anyway — в любом случае, все равно.

\*\*Если в предложении есть другое отрицание, употребляется any и его производные;

**every** (каждый) и его производные; **everything** (всё), **everybody** (все), **everywhere** (езде) имеют те же формы в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях.

### Examples:

I want to ask you *some* questions. Have you got *any* relatives? There is *no* place like home. There aren't *any* chairs in the room. She told us *something* interesting. Did he tell you *anything*? *Nothing* will change the situation. We can't do *anything*. Ask *somebody* to help you. Is *anybody* at home? *Nobody* answers the phone. Her relatives are *somewhere* in Australia. I couldn't find the book *anywhere*. We shall try and do it *somehow*. What time shall we meet? — *Any* time will do. It is so simple, *anybody* will know it. I would do *anything* for you. You will have to tell the truth *anyway*. *Every* cloud has its silver lining. *Everybody* is here, we may begin. There were flowers *everywhere*, even on the floor.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS (СТЕПЕНИ СРАВНЕНИЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫХ И НАРЕЧИЙ)

	Положительная	Сравнительная	Превосходная
Односложные и некоторые двусложные	big warm easy fast	bigger warmer easier faster	biggest warmest easiest fastest
Многосложные	beautiful interesting dangerous carefully	more beautiful more interesting more (less) dangerous more carefully	most beautiful most interesting most (least) dangerous most carefully
Прилагательные, образующие степени сравнения не по правилам			
good	better	best	
bad	worse	worst	

old	older (сравнение по возрасту)	oldest
	elder (старшинство в семье)	eldest
far	farther (дальше)	farthest
	further (далее)	furthest
much many*	more	most
little**	less	least
few	fewer	fewest

\*В английском языке эти неопределенные местоимения имеют степени сравнения.

\*\*Прилагательное *little* имеет степени сравнения: *smaller* — *smallest*.

*as...as* — такой же...как

The dog is *as big as* a horse. It's *as cold as* in winter.

*not so...as* — не такой...как

She was *not so young as* he thought.

*the...the* — чем...тем

*The more* we study *the more* we know.

*much* + сравнительная степень = «намного» + сравнит. степень:

*much better* — намного лучше, *much younger* — намного моложе, *much more interesting* — намного интереснее

*still* + сравнительная степень = «еще» + сравнит. степень:

*still easier* — еще проще, *still more difficult* — еще труднее

### Examples:

Tom is *bigger* than Jane because he is 2 years *older* than she, but she is *more* beautiful.

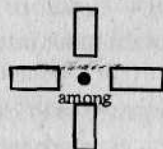
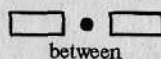
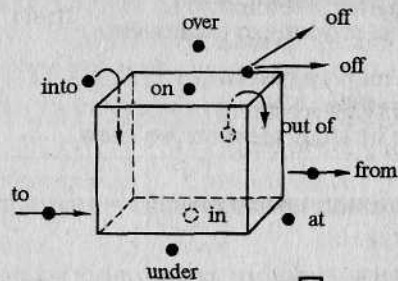
This is the *most* interesting book I know.  
 Who is *the eldest* in their family?  
 Odessa is *farther* than Kiev.  
 Her husband is *as* old as her brother.  
 New York is *not so* beautiful as Washington.  
 The party was *much more* exciting than I thought.

### ПОВЕЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ

*Open* the window! *Go* to the door!  
*Take* the book to the library!  
*Have* a nice holiday!  
*Do* morning exercises every day! *Be* happy!

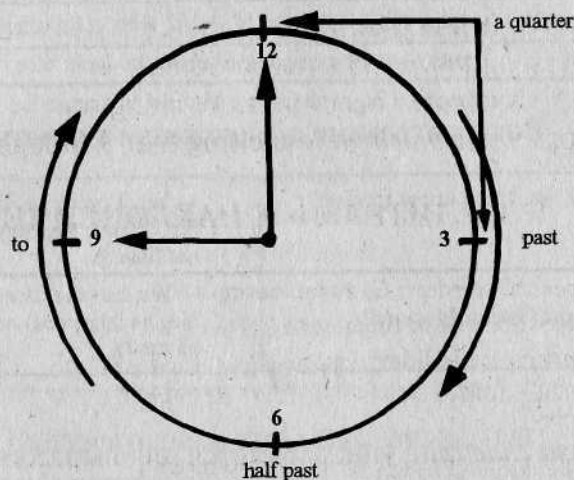
*Don't* take my book! *Don't* eat too much!  
*Don't* be angry! *Don't* make a mistake!  
*Don't* forget to take your umbrella!  
*Don't* be late!

### ПРЕДЛОГИ МЕСТА И НАПРАВЛЕНИЯ



in front of — перед  
 behind — за, позади  
 along — вдоль, по  
 across — через, напротив

### TIME



What time is it?

It's: 9.00 (nine o'clock)  
 8.30 (half past eight)  
 7.15 (a quarter past seven)  
 6.45 (a quarter to seven)  
 13.50 (ten minutes to two)  
 14.05 (five minutes past two)  
 10.25 (twenty five past ten)  
 9.35 (twenty five to ten)

a.m.	— in the morning (from 00 to 12)
p.m.	— in the afternoon (in the evening) (from 12 to 24)

clock — часы настенные, настольные

alarm clock — будильник

watch — наручные часы

hour hand — часовая стрелка

minute hand — минутная стрелка

face of the clock (watch) — циферблат

My watch is right (wrong). — Мои часы идут правильно/неправильно.

My watch is fast (slow). — Мои часы спешат/отстают.

## PRESENT INDEFINITE

I, we, you, they	<i>learn English, live in Moscow, work at an office, like music</i>
he, she, it	<i>goes to work every day, likes books, looks nice</i>

## Вопросительные предложения и ответы

Do you (I, we, they) know English?	— Yes, I (you, we, they) <i>do</i> . No, I (you, we, they) <i>do not (don't)</i> .
Does he (she) live in Moscow?	— Yes, he (she) <i>does</i> . No, he (she) <i>does not (doesn't)</i> .

*Present Indefinite* употребляется для выражения действий, событий, фактов, которые происходят обычно, постоянно, регулярно в настоящем времени:

I *go to work every day*.

He *never does morning exercises*.

He *doesn't like coffee*.

She *is a doctor*.

We *are students*.

It *often rains here*.

They *write to me every week*.

**Обстоятельства времени,  
наиболее часто употребляемые в Present Indefinite**

always	— всегда	occasionally	— изредка
often	— часто	normally	— обычно
ever	— когда-либо	regularly	— регулярно
never	— никогда	rarely	— редко
sometimes	— иногда	hardly ever	— почти никогда
usually	— обычно	once a month	— раз в месяц
as usual	— как обычно	as a rule	— как правило
generally	— обычно		

## PAST INDEFINITE

Правильные глаголы: окончание "-ed"  
Неправильные глаголы: 2 форма глагола  
(см. таблицу неправильных глаголов)

I *wanted* to become a teacher when I *was* a child.

They *were* at home yesterday.

We *called* you yesterday.

He *moved* to Moscow last year.

She *came* a few minutes ago.

It *happened* long ago.

I *learned* English at school.

We *spoke* to her and *told* her the truth.

## Вопросительные предложения и ответы

Did	I	see you yesterday?	— Yes, you <i>did</i> .
	you	go to the cinema?	— No, I <i>did not</i> .
	she	invite you to dinner?	— Yes, she <i>did</i> .
	he	marry her?	— No, he <i>didn't</i> .
	we	phone them on Monday?	— No, you <i>didn't</i> .
	they	understand you?	— Yes, they <i>did</i> .

## "To be" в Past Indefinite

I, she, he, it	<i>was</i> at home.	We, you, they	<i>were</i> at work.
<i>Was</i> it last year? — Yes, it <i>was</i> . No, it <i>wasn't</i> .			
<i>Were</i> you a student? — Yes, I <i>was</i> . No, I <i>wasn't</i> .			
<i>Were</i> they at the office? — Yes, they <i>were</i> . No, they <i>weren't</i> .			

*Past Indefinite* употребляется для выражения действий, событий или фактов, относящихся к прошлому. Как правило, время действия или указано, или понятно по контексту:



She *finished* school in 1980. Spring came early. *Did* you see them at the theatre? We *had* a game of tennis after classes.

### FUTURE INDEFINITE

I, we	<i>shall</i>	have dinner at 6.
He, she, it, you, they	<i>will</i>	go to London in September. be at home tomorrow. help us do our work.

### Вопросительные предложения и ответы

<i>Shall</i> I know it?	— Yes, you <i>will</i> . No, you <i>won't</i> ( <i>will not</i> ).
<i>Will</i> you help me?	— Yes, I <i>shall</i> . No, I <i>shan't</i> ( <i>shall not</i> ).
<i>Shall</i> we begin?	— Yes, we <i>shall</i> . No, we <i>shan't</i> ( <i>shall not</i> ).
<i>Will</i> he work there?	— Yes, he <i>will</i> . No, he <i>won't</i> .

*Future Indefinite* употребляется для выражения действий, событий или фактов, относящихся к будущему:

They *will arrive* at 8.

I *shall meet* them at the station.

We *shall have* a party on Saturday.

The weather *will be* fine.

Our daughter *will be* 20 next year.

### "To be going" + Infinitive

Выражает:

1) намерение:

What *are you going to do* tomorrow? — Что ты собираешься делать завтра?

I *am going to meet* my friends. — Я собираюсь встретиться с друзьями.

2) то, что непременно или неизбежно произойдет:

It *is going to rain*. — Будет дождь.

We *are going to be* late. — Мы опоздаем.

It's *going to be* interesting. — Это будет интересно.

3) отнесенность действия или факта к будущему:

They *are going to have* a party on Saturday. — Они устраивают вечеринку в субботу.

She *is going to wear* her new dress and her husband *is going to cook* dinner. — Она наденет свое новое платье, а ее муж будет готовить обед.

Some of the guests *are going to stay* for the night.

I *am not*. — Некоторые гости останутся на ночь.

Я не останусь.

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

I	<i>am reading</i>	We	<i>are reading</i>
You	<i>are reading</i>	You	<i>are reading</i>
He, she, it	<i>is working</i>	They	<i>are working</i>

### Вопросительные предложения и ответы

<i>Am</i> I reading?	— Yes, you <i>are</i> . No, you <i>aren't</i> ?
<i>Are</i> you speaking?	— Yes, I <i>am</i> . No, I <i>am not</i> .
<i>Is</i> he working?	— Yes, he <i>is</i> . No, he <i>isn't</i> .
<i>Are</i> they smiling?	— Yes, they <i>are</i> . No, they <i>aren't</i> .

*Present Continuous* употребляется:

1) для выражения действия, происходящего в момент речи:

I *am writing* a letter. — Я пишу письмо.

She *is speaking* on the phone. — Она разговаривает по телефону.

They *are having* dinner. — Они обедают.

*Are you watching* TV? — Ты смотришь телевизор?

He *is not listening* to you. — Он не слушает тебя.

What *are you talking* about? — О чем ты говоришь?

2) для выражения действия, намеченного на будущее или известного заранее:

We *are going* to the country for the weekend. — Мы едем за город на субботу и воскресенье.

Her parents *are returning* on Monday. — Ее родители возвращаются в понедельник.

I *am not coming* tomorrow. — Я завтра не приду.

What *are you doing* tonight? — Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером?

### PAST CONTINUOUS

I	<i>was reading</i>	We	<i>were walking</i>
You	<i>were speaking</i>	You	<i>were waiting</i>
He, she, it	<i>was working</i>	They	<i>were smiling</i>

### Вопросительные предложения и ответы

<i>Was I reading?</i> —	Yes, you <i>were</i> . No, you <i>weren't</i> .
<i>Were you speaking?</i> —	Yes, I <i>was</i> . No, I <i>wasn't</i> .
<i>Was she working?</i> —	Yes, she <i>was</i> . No, she <i>wasn't</i> .
<i>Were they smiling?</i> —	Yes, they <i>were</i> . No, they <i>weren't</i> .

*Past Continuous* употребляется для выражения действия, относящегося к конкретному моменту или определенному промежутку времени в прошлом:

What *were you doing* at 3 o'clock yesterday? — I *was watching* TV. — Что вы делали вчера в 3 часа? — Я смотрела телевизор.

We *were having* lunch from 12 to 1. — Мы пообедали с 12 до 1.

It *was raining* when we went out. — Шел дождь, когда мы вышли.

He *was writing* the letter late at night. — Он писал это письмо поздно ночью.

Where *were you going* when I met you? — Куда ты шла, когда я встретила тебя?

Nobody *was talking* on the phone at that time. — В это время никто не разговаривал по телефону.

### FUTURE CONTINUOUS

I, we	<i>shall be</i> reading at 2 o'clock.
You, he, she, it, they	<i>will be</i> working at that time.

### Вопросительные предложения и ответы

<i>Shall I be waiting</i> for you?	— Yes, you <i>will</i> . No, you <i>won't</i> .
<i>Will you be working?</i>	— Yes, I <i>shall</i> . No, I <i>shan't</i> .
<i>Will he be speaking?</i>	— Yes, he <i>will</i> . No, he <i>won't</i> .

*Future Continuous* употребляется для выражения действия, относящегося к конкретному моменту в будущем:

We *shall be speaking* about it at the meeting. — Мы поговорим об этом на собрании.

What *will you be doing* at 7 o'clock tonight? — I'll *be listening* to the news. — Что вы будете делать в 7 часов вечера? — Я буду слушать новости.

She'll *be sleeping* at 6 in the morning, don't call her. — Она будет спать в 6 часов утра, не звони ей.

We *shall be waiting* for you from 5 till 5.30. — Мы будем ждать вас с 5 до 5.30.

## PRESENT PERFECT

I (you, we, they) <i>have finished</i> the work. He (she) <i>has finished</i> the work. She <i>has not seen</i> this film. They <i>have travelled</i> a lot lately.	На русский язык переводится <i>прошедшим</i> временем.
We have lived in Moscow since 1950. He has long known her. They have worked at our office for 3 years.	На русский язык переводится <i>настоящим</i> временем.

## Вопросительные предложения и ответы

<i>Have you ever been</i> to London?	— Yes, I <i>have</i> . No, I <i>haven't</i> .
<i>Has she received</i> the letter?	— Yes, she <i>has</i> . No, she <i>hasn't</i> .

*Present Perfect* употребляется:

1) Когда действие завершилось к настоящему времени или связано с настоящим своим результатом:

The train *has arrived*. — Поезд прибыл.

I *have found* my gloves. — Я нашла свои перчатки.

We *have never seen* this man before. — Мы никогда не видели этого человека раньше.

Where *have you been*? — Где ты был?

2) Когда говорящего интересует не время действия, а факт совершения или результат (хотя само действие имело место в прошлом):

Who *has taken* my book? — Кто взял мою книгу?

She *has read* a lot of books. — Она прочитала много книг.

They *have been* to Britain many times. — Они были в Британии много раз.

3) Факт или действие не завершено к настоящему, а продолжается:

We *have learned* English for many years now. — Мы уже много лет изучаем английский язык.

They *have been* married for 10 years and he *has been* very kind to her all this time. — Они женаты 10 лет, и все это время он был очень добр к ней.

4) С обстоятельствами времени: *ever, never, just* (только что), *always, long* (давно), *for a long time, recently* (недавно), *lately* (в последнее время), *since that time* (с того времени), *this year* (month, week...):

Nobody *has seen* her today. — Никто не видел ее сегодня.

I *have just seen* her. — Я только что видел ее.

There *has been* a lot of snow this winter. — Этой зимой было много снега.

You *have made* good progress in English lately. — Вы сделали большие успехи в английском в последнее время.

## УПОТРЕБЛЕНИЕ

PRESENT INDEFINITE (Continuous)	и	PRESENT PERFECT (Continuous)
Действие или факт относятся целиком к настоящему, не связаны с прошлым:		Действие или факт относятся к настоящему, но связаны с прошлым:
He <i>works</i> at the lawyer's office. — Он работает у адвоката.		He <i>has worked</i> at the lawyer's office of a long time. — Он долгое время работает у адвоката.
They <i>are</i> good friends. — Они хорошие друзья.		They <i>have been</i> good friends since childhood. — Они хорошие друзья с детства.
She <i>works</i> hard. — Она много работает.		She <i>has always worked</i> hard. — Она всегда хорошо работала.
It <i>rains</i> all the time. — Все время идет дождь.		It <i>has been raining</i> every day since we came here. — Дождь идет каждый день с тех пор, как мы приехали сюда.
I <i>learn</i> English. — Я изучаю английский.		I <i>have been learning</i> English for 3 weeks now. — Я изучаю английский уже 3 недели.
We <i>are waiting</i> for a bus. — Мы ждем автобус.		We <i>have been waiting</i> for a bus for half an hour. — Мы ждем автобус уже полчаса.

## УПОТРЕБЛЕНИЕ

PRESENT PERFECT	и	PAST INDEFINITE
1. Говорящего интересует не время действия, а только <i>факт свершения</i> : <i>I have bought</i> the tickets.		1. <i>Время действия или известно, или подразумевается</i> : <i>We didn't meet</i> them at the station. <i>I was in</i> Kiev last year.
2. Действие завершено, но имеет связь с настоящим:  а) <i>результативную</i> : He <i>has left</i> his notes behind. I have never <i>met</i> her. б) <i>временную</i> : We <i>have met</i> 3 times this week. So far she <i>has done</i> half the work.		2. Действие целиком относится к прошлому и ничем не связано с настоящим:  When I <i>was</i> young, I <i>was</i> fond of dancing. It <i>happened</i> when we <i>lived</i> in Kiev. She <i>returned</i> the day before yesterday.
3. Употребляется с обстоятельствами времени, обозначающими неистекший промежуток времени: <i>this year, this month, today...</i> I <i>have been</i> to the theater twice this week. It <i>has rained</i> all day today.		3. Употребляется с обстоятельствами времени — сочетаниями с <i>last</i> и <i>ago</i> :  It <i>was</i> a long time <i>ago</i> . Last year he <i>graduated</i> from the college. Last time we <i>spoke</i> about the problems of big cities.
4. С обстоятельствами неопределенного (неточного) времени: <i>recently, lately, of late, for the last 2 weeks...</i> They <i>haven't seen</i> much of each other lately. The weather <i>has been</i> fine for the last few days.		4. С обстоятельствами определенного (точного) времени: <i>yesterday, three days ago, in 1980...</i>  She <i>was born</i> in 1870. When <i>did</i> you last go to the theater? Five years later his next book <i>appeared</i> .
5. Сочетания с: <i>just, ever, never, yet</i> . <i>Have you had</i> your breakfast yet? He <i>has just come</i> .		Но: She <i>came</i> just now.
<i>I have never heard</i> from her since		we <i>graduated</i> from the institute (that time, 1970...)

\*В общих вопросах в Present Perfect в значении «уже» употребляется *yet*.

Have you finished your work *yet*? — Ты уже закончил работу?

## PAST PERFECT

*I had returned* by 5. — Я вернулся к 5 часам.  
The car *had arrived* before they came. — Машина пришла до того, как они приехали.  
The rain *had stopped* by the time we went out. — Дождь кончился к тому времени, как мы вышли.  
The film *had been* on till Sunday. — Фильм шел до воскресенья.  
She *had worked* hard before she entered the university.  
— Она много занималась, прежде чем поступила в университет.

*Past Perfect* употребляется для выражения действий, которые произошли ранее или до другого факта или действия в прошлом:

*I had run* into the room just before the teacher came in.

The play *had finished* by nine.

When the lady entered the concert hall the concert *had begun*.

She *had made* great progress by that time.

We *had had* our lunch by 12.

## FUTURE PERFECT

I (we) *shall have done* the work by Friday. — Я сделаю эту работу к пятнице.  
You (he, she, they) *will have built* the house by autumn. — Вы построите дом к осени.  
*Will you have returned* before we begin the meeting? — Вы вернетесь до того, как начнется собрание?  
We *shall have learned* a lot by that time. — К тому времени мы многое узнаем.  
I *shall not have finished* the article by the time you return. — Я не закончу статью к тому времени, как вы вернетесь.

*Future Perfect* употребляется для выражения действий, которые произойдут ранее или до другого факта или действия в будущем.

(В разговорной речи вместо Future Perfect можно употреблять Future Indefinite:

*I shall talk to her before you meet.*

*The taxi will arrive by the time you are here.)*

**Примечание.** В придаточных предложениях времени и условия не употребляется Future, вместо него употребляется Present, хотя действие относится к будущему:

... прежде чем мы начнем собрание (*before we begin the meeting*);

... к тому времени, когда вы вернетесь (*by the time you return*).

### УПОТРЕБЛЕНИЕ ВРЕМЕН В ПРИДАТОЧНЫХ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯХ ВРЕМЕНИ И УСЛОВИЙ



В придаточных предложениях времени и условия, относящихся к будущему времени, вместо времен Future употребляются соответствующие времена Present. В главном предложении употребляется Future.

#### Союзы придаточных предложений времени и условия:

if	— если	till	— до (вплоть до), пока не
when	— когда	until	— до (до тех пор как)
before	— до того как	as soon as	— как только
after	— после того как	as long as	— пока
while	— пока (в то время как)	unless	— если не, пока не

#### Examples:

If I *am* free tomorrow I shall call you. — Если я буду свободен завтра, я позвоню тебе.

When everybody *comes* we shall start the discussion. — Когда все придет, мы начнем обсуждение.

He will remember it as long as he *lives*. — Он будет помнить это, пока будет жить.

You won't master a foreign language unless you *work* hard. — Ты не овладеешь иностранным языком, если не будешь много работать.

We'll discuss the book after you *have read* it. — Мы обсудим книгу после того, как вы ее прочтете.

I shall do it while you *are talking* to him. — Я сделаю это, пока вы будете разговаривать с ним.

They'll wait till you *return*. — Они подождут, пока вы не вернетесь.

### MODAL VERBS (Модальные глаголы)

Модальный глагол	Модальное значение	Примеры
Can (could) эквивалент* to be able	1. Способность, возможность, умение	He can speak English. Can you do it? She <i>couldn't</i> come. You <i>will be able</i> to come tomorrow.
	2. Сомнение, предположение	It <i>can</i> rain. Can they be home?
May (might) эквивалент to be allowed	1. Возможность, разрешение	May I come in? — Yes, you <i>may</i> . She <i>might</i> go for a walk. The children <i>will be allowed</i> to swim if the weather is warm.
	2. Сомнение, предположение	It <i>may</i> rain. They <i>may</i> come soon.
Must	1. Необходимость	You <i>must</i> know your subject. He <i>must</i> try to do the work.
	2. Предположение (уверенность)	She <i>must</i> be still working. This <i>must</i> be your coat.
Mustn't	3. Запрещение	You <i>mustn't</i> go out today.
Have	1. Необходимость, вызванная обстоятельствами	I <i>have to</i> get up very early. Do you <i>have to</i> work hard? We <i>didn't have to</i> wait.

Should	Необходимость (совет)	You <i>should</i> follow my advice. She <i>shouldn't</i> miss classes.
To be	Необходимость, связанная с договоренностью или планом	He <i>is to</i> arrive on Monday. <i>Am I to</i> come at 5? The meeting <i>is to</i> last 3 hours.
Ought	Необходимость, обязанность, долг	She <i>ought to</i> know how to behave. You <i>ought to</i> help her.
Needn't = don't have	Отсутствие необходимости	You <i>needn't</i> do it now. = You <i>don't have to</i> do it now. He <i>needn't</i> buy the tickets. = He <i>doesn't have to</i> buy them.

### ПЕРЕВОД МОДАЛЬНЫХ ГЛАГОЛОВ

I <i>can</i> speak English.	Я могу говорить по-английски.
I <i>couldn't</i> speak English last year.	Я не мог говорить по-английски в прошлом году.
I hope I <i>shall be able to</i> speak good English next year.	Я надеюсь, что на будущий год смогу хорошо говорить по-английски.
They <i>can</i> come soon.	Возможно, они скоро придут.
<i>May</i> I ask a question?	Можно задать вопрос?
The weather <i>may</i> change.	Погода может измениться.
The children <i>were not allowed</i> to go in before the bell.	Детям не разрешали входить в класс до звонка.
The teacher <i>must</i> know her students well.	Учитель должен хорошо знать своих учеников.
It <i>must</i> be very interesting.	Это, наверное, очень интересно.
You <i>mustn't</i> eat too much ice cream.	Нельзя есть слишком много мороженого.
We <i>have to</i> work hard now.	Сейчас нам приходится много работать.
Tomorrow is Saturday, we <i>don't have to</i> get up early.	Завтра суббота, не надо рано вставать (можно не вставать рано).
You <i>shouldn't</i> wear this dress every day.	Не стоит (не следует) надевать это платье каждый день.
He <i>should</i> follow the doctor's instructions.	Ему следует выполнять указания врача.

\* Эквиваленты модальных глаголов *can* и *may* имеют только первое модальное значение.

The delegation <i>is to</i> arrive in April.	Делегация должна приехать в апреле.
You <i>ought to</i> finish your work on time.	Тебе необходимо закончить работу вовремя.
She <i>needn't</i> come to the office today, the boss will be away.	Ей не обязательно приходить сегодня на работу, начальника не будет.

### DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS (Разделительные вопросы)

You <i>are</i> a journalist, She <i>knows</i> French, We <i>shall</i> have lunch, You <i>have</i> been to Japan, I <i>can</i> do it myself, The students <i>had to</i> work hard, There <i>is</i> a lot of time,	<i>aren't</i> you? <i>doesn't</i> she? <i>shan't</i> we? <i>haven't</i> you? <i>can't</i> I? <i>didn't</i> they? <i>isn't</i> there?
You <i>are not</i> a student, He <i>doesn't</i> speak Spanish, She <i>is not</i> going to join us, You <i>haven't</i> met before, I <i>couldn't</i> do it alone, They <i>didn't</i> have to do it, Your friends <i>haven't</i> arrived, There <i>wasn't</i> much traffic,	<i>are</i> you? <i>does</i> he? <i>is</i> she? <i>have</i> you? <i>could</i> I? <i>did</i> they? <i>have</i> they? <i>was</i> there?

Перевод разделительных вопросов на русский язык:  
I told you about it, didn't I? — Я *ведь* вам об этом говорила.

She isn't English, is she? — Она *же* не англичанка.

You are coming with us, aren't you? — Ты идешь с нами, *да?*

## ВРЕМЕНА В СТРАДАТЕЛЬНОМ ЗАЛОГЕ

## Passive Voice

(Passive Voice = to be + 3 форма глагола)

Present Indefinite	am/is/are	taken
Past Indefinite	was/were	built
Future Indefinite	shall/will be	asked
Present Perfect	have/has been	translated
Past Perfect	had been	brought
Future Perfect	shall/will have been	done
Present Continuous	am/is/are being	examined
Past Continuous	was/were being	discussed

Перевод на русский язык:

## 1) Глаголом с возвратными частицами «-сь», «-ся»:

Bread *is sold* at the baker's. — Хлеб продается в булочной.Coffee *is produced* in Brazil. — Кофе производится в Бразилии.

## 2) Глаголом «быть» + краткое причастие:

The first book *was printed* in Germany. — Первая книга была напечатана в Германии.The new school *will have been built* by the 1st of September. — Новая школа будет построена к 1 сентября.

## 3) Неопределенно-личным предложением:

Newspapers *are delivered* in the morning. — Газеты доставляют утром.Dinner *was served* at 6. — Обед подали в 6 часов.

## 4) Перевод пассивных конструкций с предлогами:

The film *is much spoken about*. — Об этом фильме много говорят.Your house *will be taken care of*. — За вашим домом присмотрят.This book *is often referred to*. — На эту книгу часто ссылаются.

## Sequence of Tenses (Согласование времен)

Времена по смыслу		Времена по согласованию		
Present	Indefinite Continuous Perfect	Past	Indefinite Continuous Perfect	He said that
Past	Indefinite Continuous Perfect	Past	Perfect Continuous Perfect	He said that
Future	Indefinite Continuous Perfect	Future-in-Past	Indefinite Continuous Perfect	He said that

Examples for each row:

- Present: He *learns* English. She *is playing* tennis. They *have returned*.
- Past: You *translated* the text. She *was watching* TV. They *had returned* by 7.
- Future: We *shall call* on him. You *will be wearing* that hat. She *will have received* your letter by Saturday.

## Перевод прямой речи в косвенную

Прямая речь	Косвенная речь
<b>1. Утверждения:</b> She said: "We have moved into a new house." He thought, "It's going to rain." The announcement said, "The plane landed a minute ago."	She said (that) they had moved into a new house. He thought it was going to rain. The announcement said that the plane had landed a minute before.
<b>2. Вопросы:</b> <b>A. Общие</b> "Is it true?" he wondered. I asked, "Have they got married?" Mother asked, "Did you meet them?" <b>B. Специальные</b> "What time is it?" I inquired. "How many languages can you speak?" the interviewer asked her. She wanted to ask him, "How many times have you visited Canada?"	He wondered if it was true. I asked if they had got married. Mother asked if we had met them. I inquired what time it was. The interviewer asked her how many languages she could speak. She wanted to know how many times he had visited Canada.
<b>3. Просьбы, приказание:</b> "Open your case," the officer ordered the passenger. "Live my house immediately!" she shouted to him. "Wash up after dinner," Mother said to her daughter. "Don't tell anybody about the accident," her brother said. "Could you help me?" she asked. "Will you, please, speak louder," the teacher demanded.	The officer ordered the passenger to open his case. She ordered him to live her house. Mother told her daughter to wash up after dinner. Her brother asked her not to tell anybody about the accident. She asked me to help her. The teacher asked me to speak louder.

ПОРЯДОК СЛОВ  
В АНГЛИЙСКОМ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИИ

## Прямой порядок слов

	подлежащее	сказуемое	
Повествовательное предложение	We The train	live is arriving	in Moscow. on time.
Вопрос к подлежащему	Who What	can translate surprised	the text? you?
Разделительный вопрос	You The train She	are a student, hasn't stopped, is American,	aren't you? has it? isn't she?

## Обратный порядок слов

Общие вопросы	вспомогат. глагол (модальный, глагол-связка)	подлежащее	смысловый глагол (именная часть сказуемого)	
	Do Are Is Can	you they she you	know English? writing help	French? a letter? me?
Специальные вопросы:				
Where What What time How long	do can does will	you I the meeting it	live do? begin take	now? for you? you?
Альтернативные вопросы:				
	Is Do Are	he you they	a student like leaving	or a worker? coffee or tea? today or tomorrow?

## "To be" + прилагательное (причастие прошедшего времени), соответствующее в русском языке глаголу

to be absent	отсутствовать
to be afraid	бояться
to be angry	сердиться
to be anxious	беспокоиться
to be aware	осознавать
to be busy	заниматься
to be cold	мерзнуть
to be confused	смущаться
to be content	довольствоваться
to be delighted	восхищаться
to be disappointed	разочароваться
to be engaged in	заниматься
to be fond of	увлекаться
to be frightened	испугаться
to be glad	радоваться
to be hungry	хотеть есть
to be ill	болеть
to be interested in	интересоваться



to be late	опаздывать
to be mistaken	ошибаться
to be nervous	нервничать
to be present	присутствовать
to be proud of	гордиться
to be sleepy	хотеть спать
to be sorry	сожалеть
to be surprised	удивляться
to be tired	устать
to be upset	огорчаться
to be used to	привыкнуть
to be worried	беспокоиться
to be worth	стоять

## ГЛАГОЛЫ-СВЯЗКИ

### 1. Глаголы-связки, выражающие наличие качества или состояние:

<i>to be</i>	He <i>is</i> 20. — Ему 20 лет. Life <i>is</i> interesting. — Жизнь интересная.
<i>to feel</i>	She <i>feels</i> well. — Она чувствует себя хорошо. It <i>feels</i> great. — Это прекрасно.
<i>to look</i>	You <i>look</i> worried. — Вы чем-то озабочены.
<i>to seem</i>	It <i>seems</i> easy — Это кажется легким. He <i>seems</i> OK. — Кажется, с ним все в порядке.

### 2. Глаголы-связки, выражающие приобретение нового качества или переход в другое состояние:

<i>to become</i>	She <i>has become</i> an actress. — Она стала актрисой.
<i>to get</i>	I <i>got</i> tired of this work. — Я устал от этой работы.
<i>to grow</i>	It's <i>growing</i> dark. — Темнеет.
<i>to turn</i>	She <i>turned</i> pale. — Она побледнела.
<i>to fall</i>	He <i>fell</i> asleep in class. — Он заснул на занятии.
<i>to go</i>	She <i>went</i> mad. — Она сошла с ума.

## ОСНОВНЫЕ ЗНАЧЕНИЯ НЕКОТОРЫХ НАИБОЛЕЕ УПОТРЕБЛЯЕМЫХ ПРЕДЛОГОВ

On	места (на поверхности)	On the table, on the roof
	времени (дни)	On Sunday, on the 2nd of August
	по (теме, вопросу)	Let's speak on this problem.
In	места (в, внутри)	In the house, in the pocket
	времени	(месяц, год) In spring, in 1980, in May.
		через In an hour, in 5 days, in a week
по (предмету)	An exam in Math, a class in English	
At	места (у, около)	At the table, at the window
	местопребывание	At school, at home, at work
	времени	At 3 o'clock, at that time, at what time?
	а также:	Look at, smile at, shout at, aim at
Of	соответствует русскому родительному падежу:	A textbook of English, the 23d of August, a time of trouble
To	направления	кому? To me, to her, to his friend
		куда? To Kiev, to the theatre
By	места (у, около)	By the window, by the fire
	времени (к)	By 2 o'clock, by the evening
	соответствует русскому творительному падежу:	The song is written by N., translated by M.
With	с (кем-л., чем-л.)	With us, with me, with milk
	соответствует русскому творительному падежу:	We eat with a spoon, fork and knife and write with a pen.
Without	без	You can't learn to speak English without speaking. I translated it without a dictionary.
For	времени	For 2 weeks, for a long time, for ever
	для	For you, for them, for whom?
About	о (об)	We speak about films, actors and about the weather.
	по (без определенного направления)	They are walking about the garden. We were walking about the street.
From	от, из	From her, from Moscow, from here. Instant coffee is made from coffee grains.
Within	в, в пределах	You must do it within a week.

## ТАБЛИЦА НЕПРАВИЛЬНЫХ ГЛАГОЛОВ

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle (Participle II)	Translation
be	was, were	been	быть, находиться
bear	bore	born	рожать
become	became	become	становиться
begin	began	begun	начинать(ся)
blow	blew	blown	дуть
break	broke	broken	разбивать(ся)
bring	brought	brought	приносить
build	built	built	строить
buy	bought	bought	покупать
catch	caught	caught	ловить, хватать
choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
come	came	come	приходить
cost	cost	cost	стоять
cut	cut	cut	резать, рубить
do	did	done	делать
draw	drew	drawn	рисовать
drink	drank	drunk	пить
drive	drove	driven	ехать, вести автомобиль
eat	ate [et]	eaten	есть
fall	fell	fallen	падать
feed	fed	fed	кормить
feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
fight	fought	fought	бороться, драться
find	found	found	находить
fly	flew	flown	летать
forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
freeze	froze	frozen	замерзать
get	got	got	получать, добираться
give	gave	given	давать
go	went	gone	идти
grow	grew	grown	расти
have	had	had	иметь
hear	heard	heard	слышать
hide	hid	hidden	прятать(ся)
hit	hit	hit	ударять
hold	held	held	держать
keep	kept	kept	хранить
know	knew	known	знать
lead	led	led	вести
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	учить, узнавать
leave	left	left	оставлять
lend	lent	lent	одолжить
let	let	let	позволять

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle (Participle II)	Translation
lie	lay	lain	лежать
lose	lost	lost	терять
make	made	made	делать
mean	meant	meant	означать
meet	met	met	встречать(ся)
pay	paid	paid	платить
put	put	put	класть, ставить
read [rid]	read [red]	read [red]	читать
ride	rode	ridden	ехать верхом
ring	rang	rung	звонить
rise	rose	risen	подниматься
run	ran	run	бежать
say	said [sed]	said [sed]	сказать
see	saw [sɔ:]	seen	видеть
sell	sold	sold	продавать
send	sent	sent	посылать
set	set	set	ставить; заходить (о солнце)
shake	shook	shaken	трясти
shine	shone	shone	светить
shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
show	showed	shown	показывать
sing	sang	sung	петь
sit	sat	sat	сидеть
sleep	slept	slept	спать
smell	smelt	smelt	нюхать; пахнуть
speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
spend	spent	spent	проводить
stand	stood	stood	стоять
steal	stole	stolen	красть
strike	struck	struck	ударять
swim	swam	swum	плавать
take	took	taken	брать
teach	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	обучать
tell	told	told	сказать (кому-л.)
think	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
throw	threw	thrown	бросать
understand	understood	understood	понимать
upset	upset	upset	опрокинуть; перевернуть
wake	woke	woken	просыпаться
wear	wore	worn	носить (об одежде)
weep	wept	wept	плакать
win	won [wɒn]	won [wɒn]	побеждать, выигрывать
write	wrote	written	писать

## НАИБОЛЕЕ УПОТРЕБИТЕЛЬНЫЕ СУФФИКСЫ И ПРЕФИКСЫ

### СУФФИКСЫ

#### 1. Суффиксы существительных

*а) для обозначения действующего лица*

-er:	teacher, worker, driver, producer
-or:	translator, actor, inventor
-ist:	artist, specialist, communist

*б) для обозначения отвлеченных (иногда конкретных) существительных*

-ism:	socialism, communism, professionalism
-ion:	construction, discussion, opinion, region
-ment:	development, agreement, improvement, document, instrument
-ance, -ence:	importance, resistance, difference, insistence
-ty:	certainty, activity, possibility, necessity
-ry:	century, country, inquiry
-cy:	accuracy, policy, democracy
-ure:	culture, pressure, measure, figure
-age:	language, marriage, village, luggage
-ness:	darkness, kindness, blindness, weakness
-th:	truth, depth, growth, death, path
-tude:	attitude, longitude, altitude
-ship:	friendship, membership, leadership
-dom:	freedom, wisdom, kingdom

-hood:	childhood, neighbourhood, brotherhood
-our:	colour, labour, humour

(по орфографии, принятой в США, -or: color, labor)

#### 2. Суффиксы прилагательных

-al:	natural, social, cultural
-able, -ible:	acceptable, desirable, possible
-ant, -ent:	important, resistant, different, insistent
-ous:	dangerous, famous, numerous
-ive:	active, relative, constructive
-ic:	specific, economic, electric
-y:	cloudy, foggy, rainy, sunny (прибавляется к существительному)
-ful:	powerful, careful, fruitful (суффикс образован от прилагательного full — полный, поэтому означает наличие качества)
-less:	powerless, careless, useless (означает отсутствие качества и соответствует русской приставке «без-»/«бес-» - бессильный, бездомный и т.д.)

#### 3. Суффиксы глаголов

-ate:	translate, indicate, communicate
-ize, -ise:	organize/organise, realize/realise, centralize/centralise
-fy:	modify, simplify, classify
-en:	sharpen, widen, strengthen

#### 4. Суффиксы наречий

-ly:	coldly, slowly, suddenly (наречия образа действия, отвечают на вопрос: как?)
------	--

**-ward, -wards:** homewards, backwards (означает направление; с помощью суффикса **-ward** могут образовываться прилагательные: **backward** — отсталый, **inward** — внутренний)

## ПРЕФИКСЫ

### 1. Префиксы с отрицательным значением

**un-:** **unreal** — нереальный, **unofficial** — неофициальный, **unknown** — неизвестный, **undress** — раздевать, **untie** — развязывать

**in-:** **incapable** — неспособный, **incomplete** — неполный, **incomparable** — несравнимый

(употребляется перед губными согласными b, m, p)

**im-:** **impossible** — невозможный, **impatient** — нетерпеливый, **immobile** — неподвижный

(употребляется перед l)

**il-:** **illegal** — незаконный, **illogical** — нелогичный, **illiterate** — неграмотный

(употребляется перед r)

**ir-:** **irregular** — нерегулярный, **irresponsible** — безответственный

**non-:** **non-essential** — несущественный

(со значением «неправильно, неверно»)

**mis-:** **misinform** — неправильно информировать, **misunderstand** — неправильно понять; недопонять

### 2. Префиксы с другими значениями

(придает значение противоположного действия)

**dis-:** **disappear** — исчезать, **discover** — открывать, **disorder** — беспорядок

(со значением «снова, заново, вновь», иногда соответствует русской приставке «пере-»)

**re-:** **reappear** — снова появляться, **reconstruct** — реконструировать, перестраивать, **reelect** — снова избирать, переизбирать

(выражает значение противоположного действия)

**de-:** **decentralize** — децентрализовать, **demobilize** — демобилизовать

(имеет значение «делать»)

**en-:** **enrich** — обогащать, делать богатым, **enslave** — порабощать, **enlarge** — увеличивать

(со значением «перед, ранее»)

**pre-:** **prehistoric** — доисторический, **prewar** — довоенный, **prerevolutionary** — дореволюционный

(со значением «после»)

**post-:** **postwar** — послевоенный, **postrevolutionary** — послереволюционный

(со значением «сверх, чрезмерно»)

**over-:** **overestimate** — переоценивать, **overpay** — переплачивать

(со значением «недостаточно»)

**under-:** **underestimate** — недооценивать, **underpay** — недоплатить, оплачивать низко

(со значением «под»)

**sub-:** **subdivision** — подразделение, **subtropical** — субтропический («под тропиками»)

(со значением «сверх»)

**super-:** **supernatural** — сверхъестественный, **superman** — сверхчеловек

(со значением «между, взаимно»)

**inter-:** **interaction** — взаимодействие, **interdependent** — зависящий один от другого

(со значением «через, за»)

**trans-:** **transatlantic** — трансатлантический, **transplant** — пересаживать

(означает общность действия, соответствует русской приставке «со-»)

**co-:** **co-operation** — сотрудничество, кооперация, **co-education** — совместное обучение, **co-existence** — сосуществование

(со значением «заранее, вперед», соответствует русской приставке «пред-»)

**fore-:** **foresee** — предвидеть, **foretell** — предсказать

### THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

<b>Aa</b>	<i>Aa</i>	[ei]	<b>Nn</b>	<i>Nn</i>	[en]
<b>Bb</b>	<i>Bb</i>	[bi:]	<b>Oo</b>	<i>Oo</i>	[əv]
<b>Cc</b>	<i>Cc</i>	[si:]	<b>Pp</b>	<i>Pp</i>	[pi:]
<b>Dd</b>	<i>Dd</i>	[di:]	<b>Qq</b>	<i>Qq</i>	[kju:]
<b>Ee</b>	<i>Ee</i>	[i:]	<b>Rr</b>	<i>Rr</i>	[ɑ:]
<b>Ff</b>	<i>Ff</i>	[ef]	<b>Ss</b>	<i>Ss</i>	[es]
<b>Gg</b>	<i>Gg</i>	[dʒi:]	<b>Tt</b>	<i>Tt</i>	[ti:]
<b>Hh</b>	<i>Hh</i>	[ertʃ]	<b>Uu</b>	<i>Uu</i>	[ju:]
<b>Ii</b>	<i>Ii</i>	[aɪ]	<b>Vv</b>	<i>Vv</i>	[vi:]
<b>Jj</b>	<i>Jj</i>	[dʒeɪ]	<b>Ww</b>	<i>Ww</i>	[ˈdʌblju:]
<b>Kk</b>	<i>Kk</i>	[keɪ]	<b>Xx</b>	<i>Xx</i>	[eks]
<b>Ll</b>	<i>Ll</i>	[el]	<b>Yy</b>	<i>Yy</i>	[waɪ]
<b>Mm</b>	<i>Mm</i>	[em]	<b>Zz</b>	<i>Zz</i>	[zed]

## CONTENTS

### UNIT I. About Myself

*Grammar:* «to be» в Present Indefinite, повелительное наклонение; личные местоимения; указательные местоимения; множественное число существительных .....7

### UNIT II. My Family

*Grammar:* «to be», «to have» в Present Indefinite; притяжательные местоимения; притяжательный падеж существительных .....19

### UNIT III. My New Friends

*Grammar:* The Present Indefinite Tense .....34

### UNIT IV. A Letter From My London Friend

*Grammar:* Вводное «there» с глаголом «to be»; «some», «any», «no» и их производные; «much»/»many», «little»/»few»; предлоги места и направления .....47

### UNIT V. The Day's Work Begins

*Grammar:* The Past Indefinite Tense; предлоги времени .....64

### UNIT VI. Tourists In London

*Grammar:* The Future Indefinite Tense; способы выражения отнесенности к будущему; оборот «to be going» + Infinitive .....84

### UNIT VII. Shopping

*Grammar:* The Continuous Tense Forms .....104

### UNIT VIII. Meals In an English Family

*Grammar:* The Present Perfect Tense; Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий) ... 126

### UNIT IX. Weather and Climate

*Grammar:* Degrees of Comparison (продолжение); Modal Verbs (модальные глаголы) .....152

### UNIT X. Going Out For the Evening

*Grammar:* The Past and the Future Perfect Tenses; Disjunctive Questions (разделительные вопросы) .....176

### UNIT XI. Great Britain. London

*Grammar:* Passive Voice (The Indefinite Tenses); The Article .....205

### UNIT XII. Traditions and Customs

*Grammar:* Passive Voice (The Perfect and Continuous Tenses); The Article .....234

### UNIT XIII. History Of England

*Grammar:* Sequence of Tenses; Direct and Indirect Speech .....265

Supplementary Reading .....291

Основные правила чтения .....334

Грамматика в таблицах .....337

Таблица неправильных глаголов .....370

Наиболее употребительные суффиксы и префиксы ... 372

The English Alphabet .....377

*Учебный комплект «Easy English»*

**Галина Евгеньевна Выборова  
Каринэ Степановна Махмурян  
Оксана Павловна Мельчина**

## **Easy English**

**Базовый курс**

*Учебник для учащихся средней школы  
и студентов неязыковых вузов*

Редактор и корректор *Г. Лаврик*  
Дизайнер обложки *В. Пантелеев*  
Художник *О. Войтенко*

Техническое редактирование и компьютерная верстка *И. Белкиной*

ИД № 04467 от 09.04.2001.

Подписано в печать 03.05.05. Формат 60×90/16. Печать офсетная.  
Бумага типографская. Гарнитура «Ньютон». Печ. л. 24,0.  
Доп. тираж 10 000 экз. Зак. № 1714. С-203.

Общероссийский классификатор продукции  
ОК-005-93, том 2—953 000

Санитарно-эпидемиологическое заключение  
№ 77.99.02.953.Д.006135.10.04 от 21.10.2004 г.

«АСТ-ПРЕСС КНИГА».

107078, Москва, Рязанский пер., д. 3.

Отпечатано с готовых диапозитивов в Государственном  
Московском предприятии «Первая Образцовая типография»  
Федерального агентства по печати и массовым коммуникациям.  
115054, Москва, Валовая, 28.

**Издательство «АСТ-ПРЕСС»  
выпускает учебный комплект из пяти книг,  
рекомендованный Министерством образования  
Российской Федерации:**

Г. Выборова, К. Махмурян, О. Мельчина

### **БАЗОВЫЙ КУРС «EASY ENGLISH»**

*Учебник для учащихся средней школы  
и студентов неязыковых вузов*

Г. Выборова, К. Махмурян, О. Мельчина

### **ТЕСТЫ ПО АНГЛИЙСКОМУ ЯЗЫКУ**

*Учебное пособие к базовому курсу*

Г. Выборова, О. Мельчина

### **70 УСТНЫХ ТЕМ ПО АНГЛИЙСКОМУ ЯЗЫКУ**

*Учебное пособие к базовому курсу*

Г. Выборова, К. Махмурян, О. Мельчина

### **СБОРНИК УПРАЖНЕНИЙ ПО АНГЛИЙСКОЙ ГРАММАТИКЕ**

*Учебное пособие к базовому курсу*

### **EASY READING.**

### **КНИГА ДЛЯ ЧТЕНИЯ НА АНГЛИЙСКОМ ЯЗЫКЕ**

*Учебное пособие к базовому курсу*

## ИЗДАТЕЛЬСКАЯ КОМПАНИЯ «АСТ-ПРЕСС»:

Россия, 107078, Москва, Рязанский пер., д. 3  
(проезд в Москве: ст. метро «Комсомольская», «Красные ворота»)  
Тел./факс: 261-31-60, тел.: 265-86-30, 265-83-59  
Переписка: E-mail: astpress@astpress.ru сайт: www.astpress.ru

По вопросам размещения рекламы  
в книгах Издательской Компании «АСТ-ПРЕСС» обращаться:  
Тел.: (095) 265-80-82, 265-86-30

По всем вопросам крупнооптовой торговли обращаться:

«АСТ-ПРЕСС Образование»      **Центральный офис:** Москва, Рязанский пер., д. 3.  
Тел./факс: (095) 265-84-97, 265-83-29.  
**Отдел реализации:** 924-39-37.  
E-mail: ast-press-edu@mtu-net.ru  
ast-edu@umail.ru      www.astpress.ru  
**Переписка:** 107078, г. Москва, а/я 5.

По вопросам средней и мелкооптовой торговли обращаться:

«АСТ-ПРЕСС Образование»:      **Склад:** г. Балашиха, ш. Энтузиастов, д. 4.  
Тел.: (095) 521-78-37, 521-03-72.  
ast-press-edu@mtu-net.ru      www.astpress.ru

### Оптовая торговля в Москве:

ООО «ИКТФ»      **Офис:** г. Москва, Рязанский пер., д. 3, 5-й этаж.  
Книжный Клуб 36.6      Тел./факс: (095) 265-13-05, 267-29-69,  
267-28-33, 261-24-90, 265-91-93, 742-92-70.  
E-mail: club366@aha.ru      www.club366.ru  
**Склад:** г. Балашиха, Звездный бул., д. 11.  
Тел.: (095) 523-25-56, 523-92-63; тел./факс: 523-11-10

По вопросам оптовой торговли по Украине обращаться:

Эксклюзивный представитель «АСТ-ПРЕСС» в Киеве  
«АСТ-ПРЕСС ДИКСИ»      **Офис:** тел.: 8-10 (38044) 464-08-74.  
**Склад:** тел.: 8-10 (38044) 490-35-78.  
E-mail: kazka@svitonline.com

### Книги Издательской Компании «АСТ-ПРЕСС»

вы всегда можете приобрести в книжных магазинах:

г. Москва: ТД «Библио-Глобус», ТД «Москва», ТД «Молодая гвардия»,  
«Московский дом книги», «Дом книги в Медведково», «Дом книги на ВДНХ» и т. д.  
г. С.-Петербург: ТД «На Невском»

**Фирменный магазин**      г. Москва, Рязанский переулок, д.3.  
«36.6-Книжный Двор»:      Тел.: (095) 265-86-56.

**Фирменные магазины в регионах:**

г. Владимир      Магазин «Былина», ул. Большая Московская, 44.  
Тел.: (0922) 32-31-59.

г. Липецк      проспект Победы, 8.  
Тел.: (0742) 48-79-32, 77-40-64.  
ул. Заводская, 3. Тел.: (0742) 71-23-13.

г. Орел      ул. Матвеева, 29. Тел.: (0862) 41-49-10.

г. Ростов-на-Дону      Магазин «Глобус», ул. Большая Садовая, 84.  
Тел.: (8632) 40-63-87.

ДЛЯ ЗАМЕТОК